

การแยกตัวประกอบของพหุนาม



นางสาวอัมริสา จันทนะศิริ

สถาบันวิทยบริการ  
จุฬาลงกรณ์มหาวิทยาลัย

วิทยานิพนธ์นี้เป็นส่วนหนึ่งของการศึกษาตามหลักสูตรปริญญาวิทยาศาสตรมหาบัณฑิต

สาขาวิชาคณิตศาสตร์ ภาควิชาคณิตศาสตร์

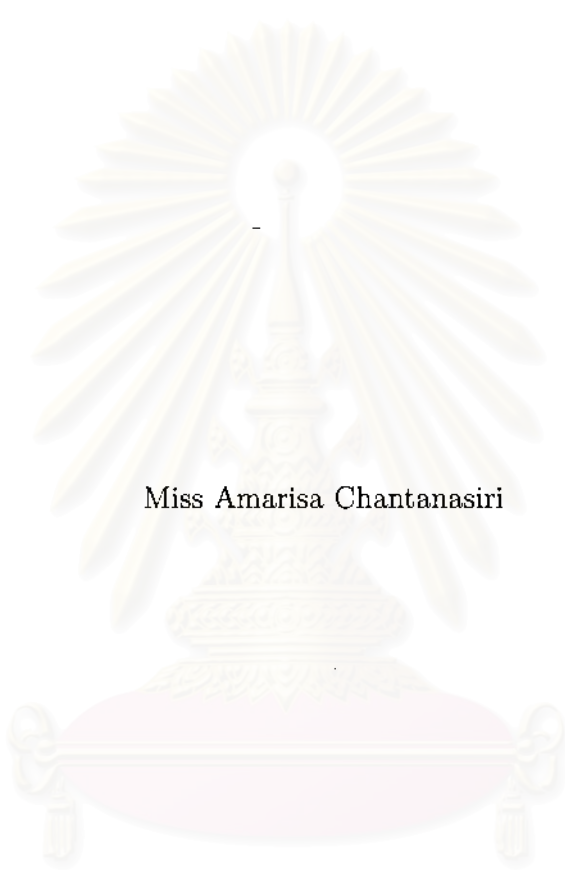
คณะวิทยาศาสตร์ จุฬาลงกรณ์มหาวิทยาลัย

ปีการศึกษา 2546

ISBN 974-17-5545-7

ลิขสิทธิ์ของจุฬาลงกรณ์มหาวิทยาลัย

FACTORIZATION OF POLYNOMIALS



Miss Amarisa Chantanasiri

สถาบันวิทยบริการ  
จุฬาลงกรณ์มหาวิทยาลัย

A Thesis Submitted in Partial Fulfillment of the Requirements  
for the Degree of Master of Science in Mathematics

Department of Mathematics

Faculty of Science

Chulalongkorn University


Academic Year 2003

ISBN 974-17-5545-7

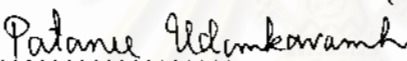
Thesis Title                      Factorization of polynomials  
By                                      Miss Amarisa Chantanasiri  
Field of Study                      Mathematics  
Thesis Advisor                      Assistant Professor Ajchara Harnchoowong, Ph.D.  
Thesis Co-advisor                      Associate Professor Vichian Laohakosol, Ph.D.

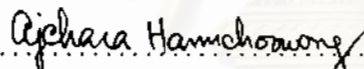
---


Accepted by the Faculty of Science, Chulalongkorn University in Partial Fulfillment of the Requirements for the Master's Degree.

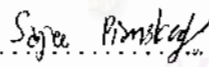
  
..... Dean of the Faculty of Science  
(Professor Piamsak Menasveta, Ph.D.)

Thesis Committee

  
..... Chairman  
(Assistant Professor Patanee Udomkavanich, Ph.D.)

  
..... Thesis Advisor  
(Assistant Professor Ajchara Harnchoowong, Ph.D.)

  
..... Thesis Co-advisor  
(Associate Professor Vichian Laohakosol, Ph.D.)

  
..... Member  
(Sajee Pianskool, Ph.D.)

สถาบันวิทยบริการ  
จุฬาลงกรณ์มหาวิทยาลัย

อัมริสา จันทนะศิริ : การแยกตัวประกอบของพหุนาม (FACTORIZATION OF POLYNOMIALS) อ.ที่ปรึกษา : ผศ. ดร. อัจฉรา หาญชูวงศ์, อ.ที่ปรึกษาร่วม : รศ. ดร. วิเชียร เลาหโกศล, 105 หน้า. ISBN 974-17-5545-7.

ในปีค.ศ. 1975 - 1976 ออสทროฟสกีตีพิมพ์ผลงานวิจัยอันลึกซึ้งและกว้างขวางในเรื่องการคูณและการแยกตัวประกอบของพหุนาม โดยมีพื้นฐานจากนัยทั่วไปของความคิดเกี่ยวกับพจน์สูงสุดและพจน์ต่ำสุดของพหุนาม ซึ่งเรียกว่าการส่ง  $A$  จากพหุนามไปยังกลุ่มก้อนสุดขีด

ส่วนแรกของงานวิจัยของออสทროฟสกี พิจารณาการจัดอันดับ  $\Omega$  ที่เป็นไปได้ทั้งหมดในเซตของผลคูณของกำลังของตัวแปรอิสระภายใต้สัจพจน์ทั่วไป ซึ่งมีหลักการจัดอันดับของพหุนามเป็นกรณีเฉพาะ จากนั้นเป็นการแสดงการสมนัยหนึ่งต่อหนึ่งระหว่าง  $\Omega$  และ  $A$  และใช้ความรู้เรื่องฟังก์ชันนำหนัก และทรงหลายหน้าแบริกของพหุนามหาการจัดอันดับ  $\Omega$  ที่เป็นไปได้ทั้งหมด

ส่วนที่สองของงานวิจัยของออสทროฟสกี เป็นการประยุกต์ผลที่ได้จากส่วนแรกไปสู่ปัญหาว่าด้วยการลดทอนไม่ได้ของพหุนาม โดยเฉพาะอย่างยิ่งในกรณีของพหุนามที่มี 2 และ 3 พจน์ ปัญหาว่าด้วยการลดทอนไม่ได้ตอบได้โดยสมบูรณ์ ส่วนกรณีของพหุนามที่มี 4 พจน์ เฉพาะกรณีที่รูปหลายเหลี่ยมแบริกเป็นรูปสามเหลี่ยมเท่านั้นที่มีคำตอบครบถ้วน

งานวิจัยนี้เป็นการศึกษางานวิจัยของออสทროฟสกีอย่างละเอียด โดยวิเคราะห์ให้รายละเอียดเพิ่มเติม พิสูจน์และให้ตัวอย่างที่เกี่ยวข้อง และประยุกต์กับปัญหาว่าด้วยการลดทอนไม่ได้ในกรณีของพหุนามที่มี 4 พจน์ที่รูปหลายเหลี่ยมแบริกเป็นรูปสี่เหลี่ยม โดยได้ผลที่สมบูรณ์ในบางกลุ่มของพหุนามดังกล่าว

สถาบันวิทยบริการ  
จุฬาลงกรณ์มหาวิทยาลัย

ภาควิชา คณิตศาสตร์  
สาขาวิชา คณิตศาสตร์  
ปีการศึกษา 2546

ลายมือชื่อนิสิต.....อัมริสา จันทนะศิริ.....  
ลายมือชื่ออาจารย์ที่ปรึกษา.....อ.อ.อ. หาญชูวงศ์.....  
ลายมือชื่ออาจารย์ที่ปรึกษาร่วม.....วิเชียร เลาหโกศล.....

# # 4572588123 : MAJOR MATHEMATICS

KEY WORDS : FACTORIZATION / POLYNOMIALS

AMARISA CHANTANASIRI : FACTORIZATION OF POLYNOMIALS.

THESIS ADVISOR : ASSIST. PROF. AJCHARA HARNCHOOWONG, Ph.D.,

THESIS CO-ADVISOR : ASSOC. PROF. VICHIAN LAOHAKOSOL, Ph.D.,

105 pp. ISBN 974-17-5545-7

In 1975-1976, A. Ostrowski published a deep, general and extensive research on multiplication and factorization of polynomials based principally on the generalized notions of highest and lowest terms of a polynomial, called general mappings,  $\Lambda$ , of a polynomial into an extreme aggregate of its terms.

The first part of Ostrowski's works discusses all possible orderings,  $\Omega$ , in the set of products of powers of independent variables under a very general set of postulates, which contains the usual lexicographical principle as a special case. A one-to-one correspondence between  $\Omega$  and  $\Lambda$  is established and all realizations of postulates defining  $\Omega$  are investigated using the ideas of weight functions and the baric polyhedron of a polynomial.

The second part of Ostrowski's works contains applications of the results in the first part to the problem of irreducibility of polynomials. In particular, the cases of 2 and 3 term polynomials are completely determined, while that of 4 term polynomials a complete discussion is only carried out for the case of the baric polygon being a triangle.

In this thesis, we carry out a comprehensive study on the above-mentioned works of Ostrowski by analyzing, clarifying, proving and supplying relevant examples to all his results. In addition, the irreducibility of 4 term polynomials whose baric polygon is a quadrangle is investigated and complete results for some large classes of polynomials are obtained.

Department **Mathematics**  
Field of study **Mathematics**  
Academic year **2003**

Student's signature. *Amarisa Chantanasiri*  
Advisor's signature. *Ajchara Harnchoowong*  
Co-advisor's signature. *Vichian Laohakosol*

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

I would like to express my profound gratitude and deep appreciation to Assistant Professor Dr. Ajchara Harnchoowong and Associate Professor Dr. Vichian Laohakosol, my thesis advisor and co-advisor, respectively, for their advice and encouragement. Sincere thanks and deep appreciation are also extended to Assistant Professor Dr. Patanee Udomkavanich, the chairman, and Dr. Sajee Pianskool, the committee member, for their comments and suggestions. Finally, I thank all teachers who have taught me all along and Ms. Angkana Sripayap who helps sending me a number of references from abroad.

In particular, I would like to express my deep gratitude to my family and friends for their encouragement throughout my graduate study.

สถาบันวิทยบริการ  
จุฬาลงกรณ์มหาวิทยาลัย

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

	page
ABSTRACT IN THAI .....	iv
ABSTRACT IN ENGLISH .....	v
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS .....	vi
TABLE OF CONTENTS .....	vii
GLOSSARY OF TERMS .....	ix
CHAPTER	
I INTRODUCTION .....	1
II ORDERINGS AND EXTREME AGGREGATES OF TERMS .....	3
2.1 Orderings of products of powers .....	3
2.2 Weight functions .....	8
2.3 Comparability of ordered $PP$ 's .....	19
2.4 Structure of sequences of weight functions .....	27
2.5 Extreme aggregates of terms .....	33
2.6 Convex bodies and polyhedrons .....	39
2.7 The baric polyhedron .....	43
III IRREDUCIBILITY .....	48
3.1 General observations on reducibility of polynomials .....	48
3.2 A criterion for absolute irreducibility .....	57
3.3 An analogue of Eisenstein-Schönemann theorem .....	62
3.4 An application of Puiseux developments .....	65

## TABLE OF CONTENTS (Continued)

CHAPTER	page
3.5 Irreducibility of polynomials with 2 or 3 terms .....	71
3.6 Polynomials with 4 terms. General discussion .....	74
3.7 Four term polynomials with a baric triangle .....	79
3.8 Four term polynomials with a baric plane quadrangle .....	91
REFERENCES .....	104
VITA .....	105

สถาบันวิทยบริการ  
จุฬาลงกรณ์มหาวิทยาลัย



## GLOSSARY OF TERMS

	page
absolute irreducibility .....	57
algebraically	
- dependent .....	50
- independent .....	50
associated $PP$ and linear form .....	25
baric polyhedron of a polynomial .....	43
belonging, rational weight function - to a given weight function .....	13
comparability classes .....	20
comparability of $PP$ 's .....	19
convex	
- body .....	39
- polyhedron .....	41
dimension	
of a convex body .....	39
of a $PP$ .....	3
direction in $\mathbb{R}^m$ .....	40
extreme aggregate .....	33

## GLOSSARY OF TERMS (Continued)

	page
higher comparability class .....	20
induced,	
$\Omega$ - by a mapping $\Lambda$ .....	33
$\Omega$ - by an ordered sequence of weight functions .....	13
irreducible sequence of weight functions .....	27
isobaric, decomposition into - aggregates .....	39
leading aggregate .....	39
length of an ordered sequence of weight functions .....	17
linear boundary component .....	40
mapping $\Lambda$ .....	33
monobaric $\Omega$ and $\Lambda$ .....	37
multiplicative reversible transformation (m-r-transformation) .....	7
norming of a polynomial .....	59
polynomial	
algebraic .....	33
homogeneous .....	51
integer .....	33
irreducible .....	48

## GLOSSARY OF TERMS (Continued)

	page
polynomial (continued)	
isobaric .....	38
primitive .....	48
proper .....	33
rational .....	33
reducible .....	48
primitive kernel of a polynomial .....	49
product of powers ( <i>PP</i> ) .....	3
algebraic .....	6
integer .....	3
rational .....	3
projection of $\Omega$ on $S$ .....	37
proper factor .....	48
rank	
of a regular ordered sequence of weight functions .....	17
of a weight function .....	9
regular	
- ordered sequence of weight functions .....	17
- ordering $\Omega$ .....	3
representative point .....	43

## GLOSSARY OF TERMS (Continued)

	page
$S$ terms of a polynomial .....	47
summit of a convex body .....	41
support plane .....	40
$U$ , trivial, nontrivial .....	20
weight function .....	8
rational .....	8

สถาบันวิทยบริการ  
จุฬาลงกรณ์มหาวิทยาลัย

# CHAPTER I

## INTRODUCTION

The problem of factorizing a given polynomial is generally difficult and has been a subject of a great deal of investigations. Yet, till now, there is no particular method capable of identifying whether a given polynomial is reducible.

In 1975-1976, Ostrowski conducted a comprehensive study on multiplication and factorization of polynomials, based on the generalized notion of ordering embracing the Lexicographic Principle for polynomials. Ostrowski also applied his results to the problem of irreducibility of polynomials. This work of Ostrowski is general, deep and noteworthy.

This thesis represents an elaborate study of Ostrowski's work by analyzing, clarifying, proving and providing relevant examples to all above-mentioned results of Ostrowski. In addition, complete determination of the irreducibility of some classes of 4 term polynomials whose baric polygon is a quadrangle, which was not resolved by Ostrowski, is given.

In Chapter II, we define products of powers, their orderings and discuss all possible orderings  $\Omega$  of products of powers satisfying a simple set of postulates. Next we introduce a weight function and establish an ordering in the set of products of powers of independent variables by the Lexicographic Principle using a sequence of weight functions. Then we use the concepts of the highest and lowest terms of a polynomial to define a general mapping,  $\Lambda$ , of a polynomial into an extreme aggregate of its terms. The classical definition of the highest terms is usually given

using the Lexicographic Principle. A one-to-one correspondence between all orderings of the type  $\Omega$  and all mappings of the type  $\Lambda$  is established. However, the same aggregates of extreme terms can be obtained for infinitely many choices of weight functions. In order to obtain a complete picture of all possibilities we introduce the baric polyhedron of a polynomial, which is uniquely determined by this polynomial.

In Chapter III, we apply the concepts and methods developed in Chapter II to the problem of irreducibility of polynomials. In the cases of 2 and 3 term polynomials, the problem can be solved completely. For 4 term polynomials a complete discussion is given only if the baric polygon is a triangle. If the baric polygon is a quadrangle, after simplifying the problem, the irreducibility of certain classes are determined completely.



สถาบันวิทยบริการ  
จุฬาลงกรณ์มหาวิทยาลัย

## CHAPTER II

### ORDERINGS AND EXTREME AGGREGATES OF TERMS

#### 2.1 Orderings of products of powers

Let  $m \geq 1$  and  $x_1, \dots, x_m$  be independent variables. The **product of powers** (denoted by **PP**) of these variables is an expression of the form

$$P := x_1^{\alpha_1} \dots x_m^{\alpha_m} \quad (2.1)$$

with  $\alpha_\mu \in \mathbb{Z}$  ( $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ). Such **PP** will be called **rational**, and a rational **PP** with  $\alpha_\mu \geq 0$  ( $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ) will be called **integer**. If  $\alpha_\mu = 0$  where  $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ , we may write  $x_1^{\alpha_1} \dots x_m^{\alpha_m} = x_1^{\alpha_1} \dots x_{\mu-1}^{\alpha_{\mu-1}} x_{\mu+1}^{\alpha_{\mu+1}} \dots x_m^{\alpha_m}$ . If all  $\alpha_\mu$  ( $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ) are  $= 0$ , we may write  $x_1^{\alpha_1} \dots x_m^{\alpha_m} = 1$ . The sum  $\alpha_1 + \dots + \alpha_m$  is called the **dimension** of the **PP**. In the following,  $P, P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4$  are arbitrary **PP**'s.

A **regular ordering** of **PP**'s is a set,  $\Omega$ , of binary relations between **PP**'s, denoted by  $\sim, >$  and  $<$  and satisfying the following postulates:

- I. There exists the complete disjunction: either  $P_1 \sim P_2$  or  $P_1 > P_2$  or  $P_1 < P_2$ .
- II.  $P_1 \sim P_1, (P_1 \sim P_2) \Rightarrow (P_2 \sim P_1), (P_1 > P_2) \Leftrightarrow (P_2 < P_1)$ .
- III.  $((P_1 > P_2) \wedge (P_2 \gtrsim P_3)) \Rightarrow (P_1 > P_3), ((P_1 \sim P_2) \wedge (P_2 > P_3)) \Rightarrow (P_1 > P_3)$ .
- IV.  $(P_1 > P_2) \Rightarrow (P_3 P_1 > P_3 P_2)$ .

From the definition, we derive a number of elementary properties, as follows:

A.  $((P_1 < P_2) \wedge (P_2 \lesssim P_3)) \Rightarrow (P_1 < P_3)$ ,  $((P_1 \sim P_2) \wedge (P_2 < P_3)) \Rightarrow (P_1 < P_3)$ .

*Proof.* These follow easily from II and III.  $\square$

B. ( $\equiv$  III'.)  $((P_1 \sim P_2) \wedge (P_2 \sim P_3)) \Rightarrow (P_1 \sim P_3)$ .

*Proof.* Suppose  $P_1 > P_3$ . Since  $P_3 \sim P_2$ , it follows from III that  $P_1 > P_2$  which is a contradiction. Similarly, we can disprove  $P_1 < P_3$ .  $\square$

C. ( $\equiv$  IV'.)  $(P_1 \sim P_2) \Rightarrow (P_3 P_1 \sim P_3 P_2)$ ,  $(P_1 < P_2) \Rightarrow (P_3 P_1 < P_3 P_2)$ .

*Proof.* The last assertion follows from II and IV. To show the first assertion, assume that  $P_1 \sim P_2$ . If  $P_3 P_1 > P_3 P_2$  or  $P_3 P_1 < P_3 P_2$ , then, multiply by  $1/P_3$ , we have  $P_1 > P_2$  or  $P_1 < P_2$  which is a contradiction.  $\square$

D.  $\left( ((P_1 > P_2) \wedge (P_3 > P_4)) \vee ((P_1 \sim P_2) \wedge (P_3 > P_4)) \vee ((P_1 > P_2) \wedge (P_3 \sim P_4)) \right) \Rightarrow (P_1 P_3 > P_2 P_4)$ ,  $((P_1 \sim P_2) \wedge (P_3 \sim P_4)) \Rightarrow (P_1 P_3 \sim P_2 P_4)$ .

*Proof.* These follow by repeated applications of IV and IV'.  $\square$

E. For  $p \in \mathbb{N}$ , we have  $P_1^p > P_2^p$  or  $P_1^p \sim P_2^p$  or  $P_1^p < P_2^p$ , and  $P_1^{-p} < P_2^{-p}$  or  $P_1^{-p} \sim P_2^{-p}$  or  $P_1^{-p} > P_2^{-p}$ .

*Proof.* Let  $p \in \mathbb{N}$ . Since

$$P_1 > P_2 \text{ or } P_1 \sim P_2 \text{ or } P_1 < P_2, \quad (2.2)$$

by repeated applications of D, it follows that

$$P_1^p > P_2^p \text{ or } P_1^p \sim P_2^p \text{ or } P_1^p < P_2^p. \quad (2.3)$$

Now, multiplying (2.2) by  $1/P_1 P_2$ , we have



$$1/P_1 < 1/P_2 \text{ or } 1/P_1 \sim 1/P_2 \text{ or } 1/P_1 < 1/P_2.$$

By repeated applications of D, it follows again that

$$1/P_1^p < 1/P_2^p \text{ or } 1/P_1^p \sim 1/P_2^p \text{ or } 1/P_1^p < 1/P_2^p, \quad (2.4)$$

i.e.  $P_1^{-p} < P_2^{-p}$  or  $P_1^{-p} \sim P_2^{-p}$  or  $P_1^{-p} > P_2^{-p}$ .  $\square$

We could define the ordering directly for the field of integer  $PP$ 's. We have to add to the postulates I - IV the postulate

$$(P_3P_1 > P_3P_2) \Rightarrow (P_1 > P_2),$$

since the invariance with respect to division is no longer contained in IV. Then, obviously, III' and IV' are valid again.

Any rational  $PP$  (2.1) with partly negative  $\alpha_\mu$ , can be written as  $P = P_1/P_2$  with integer  $PP$ 's,  $P_1$  and  $P_2$ . For integer  $PP$ 's  $P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4$ , define  $P_1/P_2 > P_3/P_4$  or  $P_1/P_2 \sim P_3/P_4$  or  $P_1/P_2 < P_3/P_4$ , according as  $P_1P_4 > P_2P_3$  or  $P_1P_4 \sim P_2P_3$  or  $P_1P_4 < P_2P_3$ . This definition does not depend on the special choice of  $P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4$ . To see this, let  $P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4, Q_1, Q_2, Q_3, Q_4$  be integer  $PP$ 's such that  $P_1/P_2 = Q_1/Q_2$  and  $P_3/P_4 = Q_3/Q_4$ . Then  $P_1Q_2 = P_2Q_1$  and  $P_3Q_4 = P_4Q_3$ . By the above definition and the postulates IV and IV', we have

$$P_1/P_2 > P_3/P_4 \text{ or } P_1/P_2 \sim P_3/P_4 \text{ or } P_1/P_2 < P_3/P_4$$

$$\Leftrightarrow P_1P_4 > P_2P_3 \text{ or } P_1P_4 \sim P_2P_3 \text{ or } P_1P_4 < P_2P_3$$

$$\Leftrightarrow Q_1Q_4P_1P_4 > Q_1Q_4P_2P_3 \text{ or } Q_1Q_4P_1P_4 \sim Q_1Q_4P_2P_3 \text{ or } Q_1Q_4P_1P_4 < Q_1Q_4P_2P_3$$

$$\Leftrightarrow Q_1Q_4P_1P_4 > Q_2Q_3P_1P_4 \text{ or } Q_1Q_4P_1P_4 \sim Q_2Q_3P_1P_4 \text{ or } Q_1Q_4P_1P_4 < Q_2Q_3P_1P_4$$

$$\begin{aligned} &\Leftrightarrow Q_1Q_4 > Q_2Q_3 \text{ or } Q_1Q_4 \sim Q_2Q_3 \text{ or } Q_1Q_4 < Q_2Q_3 \\ &\Leftrightarrow Q_1/Q_2 > Q_3/Q_4 \text{ or } Q_1/Q_2 \sim Q_3/Q_4 \text{ or } Q_1/Q_2 < Q_3/Q_4. \end{aligned}$$

We see now easily that all postulates I - IV, III', IV' remain valid in the field of rational  $PP$ 's. Thus once we have the ordering for the field of integer  $PP$ 's, we can define the ordering for the field of rational  $PP$ 's.

We consider now the  $PP$  (2.1) with  $\alpha_\mu \in \mathbb{Q}$  ( $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ). Such  $PP$  will be called **algebraic**. The set of these  $PP$ 's will be denoted by  $[x_1, \dots, x_m]$ .

In order to define our relations for the algebraic  $PP$ 's,

$$P_1 := x_1^{\alpha_1} \dots x_m^{\alpha_m}, \quad P_2 := x_1^{\beta_1} \dots x_m^{\beta_m},$$

let  $M$  be the smallest common denominator of all  $\alpha_\mu$  and  $\beta_\mu$ . If  $P_1$  and  $P_2$  are rational  $PP$ 's, we take  $M$  as 1. Then we define  $P_1 > P_2$  or  $P_1 \sim P_2$  or  $P_1 < P_2$ , according as  $P_1^M > P_2^M$  or  $P_1^M \sim P_2^M$  or  $P_1^M < P_2^M$ .

Let  $N \in \mathbb{N}$  be such that both  $P_1^N$  and  $P_2^N$  are rational  $PP$ 's. Then  $N = pM$  for some  $p \in \mathbb{N}$ . By E, it follows that  $P_1^N > P_2^N$  or  $P_1^N \sim P_2^N$  or  $P_1^N < P_2^N$ , according as  $P_1^M > P_2^M$  or  $P_1^M \sim P_2^M$  or  $P_1^M < P_2^M$ . Thus by the above definition, we have that from any of the relations between  $P_1$  and  $P_2$  follows the corresponding relation between  $P_1^N$  and  $P_2^N$ .

We see now easily that all postulates I - IV are satisfied for our ordering in the field of algebraic  $PP$ 's. Moreover, for any  $p \in \mathbb{Q}^+$ , from any of the relations (2.2) between algebraic  $PP$ 's,  $P_1$  and  $P_2$ , follow the corresponding relations in (2.3) and (2.4).

From now on, we will consider generally the algebraic  $PP$ 's unless otherwise specified. Further, all exponents which will occur in the following,

will be assumed to be rational numbers, unless otherwise specified.

Any ordering of algebraic *PP*'s satisfying the postulates I - IV will be called a **regular ordering**.

Now, we will apply a **multiplicative reversible transformation** (*m-r-transformation*) with  $a_{\mu\nu} \in \mathbb{Q}$  ( $\mu, \nu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ) such that  $\det[a_{\mu\nu}] \neq 0$ :

$$x_\mu = y_1^{a_{\mu 1}} \dots y_m^{a_{\mu m}} \quad (\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}).$$

Then each *PP* (2.1) becomes

$$y_1^{\beta_1} \dots y_m^{\beta_m},$$

where  $\beta_\nu = a_{1\nu}\alpha_1 + \dots + a_{m\nu}\alpha_m \in \mathbb{Q}$  ( $\nu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ), which is an algebraic *PP* from  $[y_1, \dots, y_m]$ . For  $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ , since  $x_\mu = y_1^{a_{\mu 1}} \dots y_m^{a_{\mu m}}$ ,  $\log x_\mu = a_{\mu 1} \log y_1 + \dots + a_{\mu m} \log y_m$ , then

$$\begin{bmatrix} \log x_1 \\ \vdots \\ \log x_m \end{bmatrix} = [a_{\mu\nu}] \begin{bmatrix} \log y_1 \\ \vdots \\ \log y_m \end{bmatrix}.$$

Let  $[b_{\mu\nu}] := [a_{\mu\nu}]^{-1}$ . Then

$$\begin{bmatrix} \log y_1 \\ \vdots \\ \log y_m \end{bmatrix} = [b_{\mu\nu}] \begin{bmatrix} \log x_1 \\ \vdots \\ \log x_m \end{bmatrix}.$$

For  $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ,  $\log y_\mu = b_{\mu 1} \log x_1 + \dots + b_{\mu m} \log x_m$ , so  $y_\mu = x_1^{b_{\mu 1}} \dots x_m^{b_{\mu m}}$  which is an algebraic *PP* from  $[x_1, \dots, x_m]$ .

Let  $P_1 := x_1^{\alpha_1} \dots x_m^{\alpha_m}$  and  $P_2 := x_1^{\beta_1} \dots x_m^{\beta_m}$  be any algebraic *PP*'s from  $[x_1, \dots, x_m]$ .

After applying the above m-r-transformation, we have

$$P_1 = y_1^{a_{11}\alpha_1 + \dots + a_{m1}\alpha_m} \dots y_m^{a_{1m}\alpha_1 + \dots + a_{mm}\alpha_m}, \quad P_2 = y_1^{a_{11}\beta_1 + \dots + a_{m1}\beta_m} \dots y_m^{a_{1m}\beta_1 + \dots + a_{mm}\beta_m}.$$

Observe that any of the relations between  $P_1$  and  $P_2$  is invariant as  $P_1$  and  $P_2$  are considered to be algebraic  $PP$ 's from  $[y_1, \dots, y_m]$ . Let  $M$  be the smallest common denominator of all  $a_{1\nu}\alpha_1 + \dots + a_{m\nu}\alpha_m$  and  $a_{1\nu}\beta_1 + \dots + a_{m\nu}\beta_m$ . By **E**,  $P_1^M > P_2^M$  or  $P_1^M \sim P_2^M$  or  $P_1^M < P_2^M$ , according as  $P_1 > P_2$  or  $P_1 \sim P_2$  or  $P_1 < P_2$ .

## 2.2 Weight functions

A function  $W : [x_1, \dots, x_m] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$  is called a **weight function** if for  $P_1$  and  $P_2$  from  $[x_1, \dots, x_m]$ ,

$$W(P_1 P_2) = W(P_1) + W(P_2).$$

It follows that  $W(1) = 0$  and for any  $PP$   $P$  and  $\alpha \in \mathbb{Q}$ , we have  $W(P^\alpha) = \alpha W(P)$ .

If we put  $w_\mu := W(x_\mu)$  ( $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ), we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} W(x_1^{\alpha_1} \dots x_m^{\alpha_m}) &= W(x_1^{\alpha_1}) + \dots + W(x_m^{\alpha_m}) \\ &= \alpha_1 W(x_1) + \dots + \alpha_m W(x_m) \\ &= w_1 \alpha_1 + \dots + w_m \alpha_m. \end{aligned} \tag{2.5}$$

This shows that we can define any weight function by (2.5) choosing  $w_1, \dots, w_m$  as arbitrary real numbers. If  $w_\mu \in \mathbb{Q}$  ( $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ),  $W(P)$  is called a **rational weight function**.

**Example 2.2.1.** 1) The weight function given by the **dimension** :

$$w_1 = \dots = w_m = 1.$$

2) The weight function given by the **degree in  $x_1$** :

$$w_1 = 1, w_2 = \dots = w_m = 0.$$

3) The weight function given by the **classical weight in the theory of symmetric functions**:

$$w_1 = 1, w_2 = 2, \dots, w_m = m.$$

**Proposition 2.2.2.** If  $r$  is the maximal number of the  $w_\mu$  in (2.5) which are linearly independent with respect to  $\mathbb{Q}$ , then  $W(P)$  in (2.5) can be represented in the form

$$W(P) = \sum_{\rho=1}^r w^{(\rho)} W^{(\rho)}(P) \quad (2.6)$$

where  $w^{(\rho)}$  ( $\rho \in \{1, \dots, r\}$ ) are linearly independent real numbers chosen from  $w_1, \dots, w_m$  and  $W^{(\rho)}(P)$  ( $\rho \in \{1, \dots, r\}$ ) are  $r$  rational weight functions which are linearly independent as linear forms in  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m$ . The number  $r$  will be called the **rank** of the weight function  $W(P)$ .

*Proof.* From the assumption, we have  $w^{(1)}, \dots, w^{(r)}$  are linearly independent with respect to  $\mathbb{Q}$  and there are  $k_{ij} \in \mathbb{Q}$  ( $i \in \{1, \dots, m-r\}$ ,  $j \in \{1, \dots, r\}$ ), not all zero, such that

$$\begin{aligned} w^{(r+1)} &= k_{11}w^{(1)} + \dots + k_{1r}w^{(r)}, \\ &\vdots \\ w^{(m)} &= k_{(m-r)1}w^{(1)} + \dots + k_{(m-r)r}w^{(r)}. \end{aligned}$$

It follows that

$$\begin{aligned}
W(P) &= w^{(1)}\alpha^{(1)} + \cdots + w^{(m)}\alpha^{(m)} \\
&= w^{(1)}\alpha^{(1)} + \cdots + w^{(r)}\alpha^{(r)} + (k_{11}w^{(1)} + \cdots + k_{1r}w^{(r)})\alpha^{(r+1)} \\
&\quad + \cdots + (k_{(m-r)1}w^{(1)} + \cdots + k_{(m-r)r}w^{(r)})\alpha^{(m)} \\
&= w^{(1)}(\alpha^{(1)} + k_{11}\alpha^{(r+1)} + \cdots + k_{(m-r)1}\alpha^{(m)}) \\
&\quad + \cdots + w^{(r)}(\alpha^{(r)} + k_{1r}\alpha^{(r+1)} + \cdots + k_{(m-r)r}\alpha^{(m)}),
\end{aligned}$$

where  $\{\alpha^{(1)}, \dots, \alpha^{(m)}\}$  is the same set of  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m\}$  but ordered appropriately.

Define

$$\left. \begin{aligned}
W^{(1)}(P) &:= \alpha^{(1)} + k_{11}\alpha^{(r+1)} + \cdots + k_{(m-r)1}\alpha^{(m)}, \\
&\quad \vdots \\
W^{(r)}(P) &:= \alpha^{(r)} + k_{1r}\alpha^{(r+1)} + \cdots + k_{(m-r)r}\alpha^{(m)}.
\end{aligned} \right\} \quad (2.7)$$

We see that  $W^{(\rho)}(P)$  ( $\rho \in \{1, \dots, r\}$ ) are rational weight functions and  $W(P) = \sum_{\rho=1}^r w^{(\rho)}W^{(\rho)}(P)$ . Finally, we show that  $W^{(\rho)}(P)$  ( $\rho \in \{1, \dots, r\}$ ) are linearly independent as linear forms in  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m$ . Suppose there exist  $a_1, \dots, a_r \in \mathbb{Q}$  such that  $a_1W^{(1)}(P) + \cdots + a_rW^{(r)}(P) = 0$ . Then  $a_1\alpha^{(1)} + \cdots + a_r\alpha^{(r)} + (a_1k_{11} + \cdots + a_rk_{1r})\alpha^{(r+1)} + \cdots + (a_1k_{(m-r)1} + \cdots + a_rk_{(m-r)r})\alpha^{(m)} = 0$ . As  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m$  are indeterminates, we get  $a_1 = \cdots = a_r = 0$ . Thus  $W^{(\rho)}(P)$  ( $\rho \in \{1, \dots, r\}$ ) are linearly independent as linear forms in  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m$ .  $\square$

From Proposition 2.2.2, for any PP  $P$ , if  $W(P) = 0$ , since  $w^{(1)}, \dots, w^{(r)}$  are linearly independent with respect to  $\mathbb{Q}$  and  $W^{(\rho)}(P)$  ( $\rho \in \{1, \dots, r\}$ ) are rational weight functions, it follows that  $W^{(\rho)}(P) = 0$  ( $\rho \in \{1, \dots, r\}$ ).

**Proposition 2.2.3.** Let  $r$  be as in Proposition 2.2.2. Then there exist  $m - r$  PP's,  $P^{(1)}, \dots, P^{(m-r)}$  such that for any PP  $P$  with  $W(P) = 0$ ,  $P = P^{(1)u_1} \dots P^{(m-r)u_{m-r}}$ ,

where  $u_1, \dots, u_{m-r} \in \mathbb{Q}$  and  $W(P^{(1)}) = \dots = W(P^{(m-r)}) = 0$ .

*Proof.* For  $\rho \in \{1, \dots, r\}$ , let  $x^{(\rho)}$  be the independent variable corresponding to the  $w^{(\rho)}$  as stated in Proposition 2.2.2.

Choose

$$\begin{aligned} P^{(1)} &:= x^{(1)(-k_{11})} \dots x^{(r)(-k_{1r})} x^{(r+1)}, \\ &\vdots \\ P^{(m-r)} &:= x^{(1)(-k_{(m-r)1})} \dots x^{(r)(-k_{(m-r)r})} x^{(m)}, \end{aligned}$$

where  $k_{ij}$  ( $i \in \{1, \dots, m-r\}$ ,  $j \in \{1, \dots, r\}$ ) are as in Proposition 2.2.2.

Let  $P := x_1^{\alpha_1} \dots x_m^{\alpha_m}$  be a  $PP$  such that  $W(P) = 0$ . Then  $W^{(\rho)}(P) = 0$  ( $\rho \in \{1, \dots, r\}$ ). By (2.7), we have

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha^{(1)} &= -k_{11}\alpha^{(r+1)} - \dots - k_{(m-r)1}\alpha^{(m)}, \\ &\vdots \\ \alpha^{(r)} &= -k_{1r}\alpha^{(r+1)} - \dots - k_{(m-r)r}\alpha^{(m)}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$\begin{aligned} P &= x_1^{\alpha_1} \dots x_m^{\alpha_m} = x^{(1)\alpha^{(1)}} \dots x^{(m)\alpha^{(m)}} \\ &= x^{(1)(-k_{11}\alpha^{(r+1)} - \dots - k_{(m-r)1}\alpha^{(m)})} \dots x^{(r)(-k_{1r}\alpha^{(r+1)} - \dots - k_{(m-r)r}\alpha^{(m)})} x^{(r+1)\alpha^{(r+1)}} \dots x^{(m)\alpha^{(m)}} \\ &= (x^{(1)(-k_{11})} \dots x^{(r)(-k_{1r})} x^{(r+1)}) \alpha^{(r+1)} \dots (x^{(1)(-k_{(m-r)1})} \dots x^{(r)(-k_{(m-r)r})} x^{(m)}) \alpha^{(m)}. \end{aligned}$$

Let  $u_1 := \alpha^{(r+1)}, \dots, u_{(m-r)} := \alpha^{(m)}$ . Then  $P = P^{(1)u_1} \dots P^{(m-r)u_{m-r}}$ .

By (2.7), it follows that

$$\begin{aligned}
W^{(1)}(P^{(1)}) &= W^{(1)}(x^{(1)(-k_{11})} \dots x^{(r)(-k_{1r})} x^{(r+1)}) = -k_{11} + k_{11} = 0, \\
&\vdots \\
W^{(r)}(P^{(1)}) &= W^{(r)}(x^{(1)(-k_{11})} \dots x^{(r)(-k_{1r})} x^{(r+1)}) = -k_{1r} + k_{1r} = 0.
\end{aligned}$$

By (2.6), we have that  $W(P^{(1)}) = \sum_{\rho=1}^r w^{(\rho)} W^{(\rho)}(P^{(1)}) = 0$ . Similarly, we have also that  $W(P^{(2)}) = \dots = W(P^{(m-r)}) = 0$ .  $\square$

**Proposition 2.2.4.** Let  $W^*(P)$  be a rational weight function which has the property that for any  $PP$   $P$ , if  $W(P) = 0$ , then  $W^*(P) = 0$ . Then  $W^*(P)$  is a  $\mathbb{Q}$ -linear combination of  $W^{(1)}(P), \dots, W^{(r)}(P)$ .

*Proof.* Let  $r$  and  $k_{ij}$  ( $i \in \{1, \dots, m-r\}$ ,  $j \in \{1, \dots, r\}$ ) be as in Proposition 2.2.2. Put  $a_1 := W^*(x^{(1)}), \dots, a_r := W^*(x^{(r)})$  and  $b_1 := -k_{11}W^*(x^{(1)}) - \dots - k_{1r}W^*(x^{(r)}) + W^*(x^{(r+1)}), \dots, b_{m-r} := -k_{(m-r)1}W^*(x^{(1)}) - \dots - k_{(m-r)r}W^*(x^{(r)}) + W^*(x^{(m)})$ . Note that  $a_j, b_i \in \mathbb{Q}$  ( $i \in \{1, \dots, m-r\}$ ,  $j \in \{1, \dots, r\}$ ) since  $W^*(P)$  is a rational weight function. For  $P := x_1^{\alpha^1} \dots x_m^{\alpha^m} = x^{(1)\alpha^{(1)}} \dots x^{(m)\alpha^{(m)}}$ , by (2.7), we have

$$\begin{aligned}
W^*(P) &= \alpha^{(1)}W^*(x^{(1)}) + \dots + \alpha^{(r)}W^*(x^{(r)}) + \alpha^{(r+1)}W^*(x^{(r+1)}) \\
&\quad + \dots + \alpha^{(m)}W^*(x^{(m)}) \\
&= (W^{(1)}(P) - k_{11}\alpha^{(r+1)} - \dots - k_{(m-r)1}\alpha^{(m)})W^*(x^{(1)}) \\
&\quad + \dots + (W^{(r)}(P) - k_{1r}\alpha^{(r+1)} - \dots - k_{(m-r)r}\alpha^{(m)})W^*(x^{(r)}) \\
&\quad + \alpha^{(r+1)}W^*(x^{(r+1)}) + \dots + \alpha^{(m)}W^*(x^{(m)}) \\
&= W^*(x^{(1)})W^{(1)}(P) + \dots + W^*(x^{(r)})W^{(r)}(P) \\
&\quad + (-k_{11}W^*(x^{(1)}) - \dots - k_{1r}W^*(x^{(r)}) + W^*(x^{(r+1)}))\alpha^{(r+1)} \\
&\quad + \dots + (-k_{(m-r)1}W^*(x^{(1)}) - \dots - k_{(m-r)r}W^*(x^{(r)}) + W^*(x^{(m)}))\alpha^{(m)} \\
&= a_1W^{(1)}(P) + \dots + a_rW^{(r)}(P) + b_1\alpha^{(r+1)} + \dots + b_{m-r}\alpha^{(m)}.
\end{aligned}$$



From Proposition 2.2.3,  $W(P^{(1)}) = \dots = W(P^{(m-r)}) = 0$ . It follows from Proposition 2.2.2 that  $W^{(\rho)}(P^{(1)}) = \dots = W^{(\rho)}(P^{(m-r)}) = 0$  ( $\rho \in \{1, \dots, r\}$ ) and by the hypothesis that  $W^*(P^{(1)}) = \dots = W^*(P^{(m-r)}) = 0$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= W^*(P^{(1)}) = W^*(x^{(1)(-k_{11})} \dots x^{(r)(-k_{1r})} x^{(r+1)}) = b_1, \\ &\vdots \\ 0 &= W^*(P^{(m-r)}) = W^*(x^{(1)(-k_{(m-r)1})} \dots x^{(r)(-k_{(m-r)r})} x^{(m)}) = b_{m-r}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus  $W^*(P) = a_1 W^{(1)}(P) + \dots + a_r W^{(r)}(P)$ . □

The rational weight function  $W^*(P)$  which has the property that for any  $PP$   $P$ , if  $W(P) = 0$ , then  $W^*(P) = 0$  will be called **belonging to  $W(P)$** . From Proposition 2.2.4, it follows that the set of all rational weight functions belonging to  $W(P)$  is identical with the set of all  $\mathbb{Q}$ -linear combinations of  $W^{(1)}(P), \dots, W^{(r)}(P)$ . Thus the set of all rational weight functions belonging to  $W(P)$  is uniquely determined by  $W(P)$ .

Consider now an ordered sequence of weight functions

$$W_\kappa(x_1^{\alpha_1} \dots x_m^{\alpha_m}) := \sum_{\mu=1}^m w_\mu^{(\kappa)} \alpha_\mu \quad (\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}). \quad (2.8)$$

Using the sequence (2.8), a regular ordering  $\Omega$  of  $PP$ 's can be **induced by the Principle of Lexicographic Ordering**, postulating that  $P_1 \sim P_2$  if  $W_\kappa(P_1) = W_\kappa(P_2)$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ ), and that  $P_1 > P_2$  if there exists  $k_0 \in \{1, \dots, k\}$  such that  $W_\kappa(P_1) = W_\kappa(P_2)$  ( $\kappa < k_0$ ) and  $W_{k_0}(P_1) > W_{k_0}(P_2)$ . Then  $P_1 < P_2$  if there exists  $k_0 \in \{1, \dots, k\}$  such that  $W_\kappa(P_1) = W_\kappa(P_2)$  ( $\kappa < k_0$ ) and  $W_{k_0}(P_1) < W_{k_0}(P_2)$ . Properties I, II, III follow immediately. To show property IV, let  $P_1, P_2, P_3$  be arbitrary  $PP$ 's. Assume that  $P_1 > P_2$ . Then there exists  $k_0 \in \{1, \dots, k\}$  such that

$W_\kappa(P_1) = W_\kappa(P_2)$  ( $\kappa < k_0$ ) and  $W_{k_0}(P_1) > W_{k_0}(P_2)$ . Note that for  $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ ,  $W_\kappa(P_3P_1) - W_\kappa(P_3P_2) = (W_\kappa(P_3) + W_\kappa(P_1)) - (W_\kappa(P_3) + W_\kappa(P_2)) = W_\kappa(P_1) - W_\kappa(P_2)$ . It follows that  $W_\kappa(P_3P_1) - W_\kappa(P_3P_2) = W_\kappa(P_1) - W_\kappa(P_2) = 0$  ( $\kappa < k_0$ ), i.e.  $W_\kappa(P_3P_1) = W_\kappa(P_3P_2)$  ( $\kappa < k_0$ ), and  $W_{k_0}(P_3P_1) - W_{k_0}(P_3P_2) = W_{k_0}(P_1) - W_{k_0}(P_2) > 0$ , i.e.  $W_{k_0}(P_3P_1) > W_{k_0}(P_3P_2)$ . Thus  $P_3P_1 > P_3P_2$ .

We see that the weight functions and the ordering defined above by means of weight functions are invariant if we apply an m-r-transformation of coordinates.

For the case  $m = 1$ , by (2.5), we have that any weight function is of the form  $W(x_1^{\alpha_1}) = w_1\alpha_1$  where  $w_1 \in \mathbb{R}$ . Assume that  $w_1 \neq 0$ . Then for any  $\alpha_1, \beta_1 \in \mathbb{Q}$ ,  $W(x_1^{\alpha_1}) = W(x_1^{\beta_1}) \Leftrightarrow w_1\alpha_1 = w_1\beta_1 \Leftrightarrow \alpha_1 = \beta_1$ . Thus any sequence of weight functions  $W_1(P), \dots, W_k(P)$  which induces a regular ordering of  $[x_1]$  could be replaced by the sequence  $W_{k_0}(P)$  where  $k_0 = \min\{\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\} \mid W_\kappa(P) \neq 0\}$  if there exists  $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}$  such that  $W_\kappa(P) \neq 0$ . Let  $\Omega$  be the regular ordering of  $[x_1]$  induced by the weight function  $W(x_1^{\alpha_1}) := w_1\alpha_1$  where  $w_1 \in \mathbb{R}$ . For  $w_1 = 0$ , we have  $W(x_1^{\alpha_1}) \equiv 0$ . Then there is no ordering at all. We may assume that  $w_1 \neq 0$ . So  $x_1^{\alpha_1} \sim x_1^{\beta_1} \Leftrightarrow W(x_1^{\alpha_1}) = W(x_1^{\beta_1}) \Leftrightarrow w_1\alpha_1 = w_1\beta_1 \Leftrightarrow \alpha_1 = \beta_1 \Leftrightarrow x_1^{\alpha_1} = x_1^{\beta_1}$ . If  $w_1 > 0$ , then  $x_1^{\alpha_1} > x_1^{\beta_1} \Leftrightarrow W(x_1^{\alpha_1}) > W(x_1^{\beta_1}) \Leftrightarrow w_1\alpha_1 > w_1\beta_1 \Leftrightarrow \alpha_1 > \beta_1$ , and dually,  $x_1^{\alpha_1} < x_1^{\beta_1} \Leftrightarrow \alpha_1 < \beta_1$ . Similarly, if  $w_1 < 0$ , then  $x_1^{\alpha_1} > x_1^{\beta_1} \Leftrightarrow W(x_1^{\alpha_1}) > W(x_1^{\beta_1}) \Leftrightarrow w_1\alpha_1 > w_1\beta_1 \Leftrightarrow \alpha_1 < \beta_1$ , and dually,  $x_1^{\alpha_1} < x_1^{\beta_1} \Leftrightarrow \alpha_1 > \beta_1$ . Hence there are two possible regular orderings of  $[x_1]$ .

**Proposition 2.2.5.** The sequence (2.8) of weight functions allows the following transformations which do not change the ordering  $\Omega$ .

- A. Any weight function in (2.8) can be multiplied by any positive constant.
- B. Any weight function  $W_{\kappa'}(P)$  in (2.8) can be replaced with

$$\bar{W}_{\kappa'}(P) := W_{\kappa'}(P) + \sum_{\kappa < \kappa'} c_{\kappa} W_{\kappa}^*(P),$$

with arbitrary  $c_{\kappa}$  where each  $W_{\kappa}^*(P)$  is a rational weight function belonging to  $W_{\kappa}(P)$ .  
 C. A weight function which is  $\equiv 0$  can be dropped from the sequence (2.8), if we do not change the order of the remaining elements of (2.8).

*Proof.* A and C are clear. To show B, let  $P_1, P_2$  be arbitrary  $PP$ 's and  $\kappa' \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ . Replace  $W_{\kappa'}(P)$  in (2.8) with  $\bar{W}_{\kappa'}(P)$ . Then (2.8) becomes

$$W_1(P), \dots, W_{\kappa'-1}(P), \bar{W}_{\kappa'}(P), W_{\kappa'+1}(P), \dots, W_k(P). \quad (2.9)$$

If  $P_1 \sim P_2$  with respect to (2.8), then  $W_{\kappa}(P_1) = W_{\kappa}(P_2)$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ ), so  $W_{\kappa}(P_1 P_2^{-1}) = W_{\kappa}(P_1) - W_{\kappa}(P_2) = 0$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ ). Since each  $W_{\kappa}^*(P)$  is belonging to  $W_{\kappa}(P)$ ,  $W_{\kappa}^*(P_1 P_2^{-1}) = 0$  ( $\kappa < \kappa'$ ), yielding  $W_{\kappa}^*(P_1) = W_{\kappa}^*(P_2)$  ( $\kappa < \kappa'$ ). Then  $\bar{W}_{\kappa'}(P_1) = W_{\kappa'}(P_1) + \sum_{\kappa < \kappa'} c_{\kappa} W_{\kappa}^*(P_1) = W_{\kappa'}(P_2) + \sum_{\kappa < \kappa'} c_{\kappa} W_{\kappa}^*(P_2) = \bar{W}_{\kappa'}(P_2)$ . Thus  $P_1 \sim P_2$  with respect to (2.9). Next, if  $P_1 > P_2$  with respect to (2.8), then there exists  $k_0 \in \{1, \dots, k\}$  such that  $W_{\kappa}(P_1) = W_{\kappa}(P_2)$  ( $\kappa < k_0$ ) and  $W_{k_0}(P_1) > W_{k_0}(P_2)$ , so  $W_{\kappa}(P_1 P_2^{-1}) = W_{\kappa}(P_1) - W_{\kappa}(P_2) = 0$  ( $\kappa < k_0$ ). Since each  $W_{\kappa}^*(P)$  is belonging to  $W_{\kappa}(P)$ ,  $W_{\kappa}^*(P_1 P_2^{-1}) = 0$  ( $\kappa < k_0$ ), yielding  $W_{\kappa}^*(P_1) = W_{\kappa}^*(P_2)$  ( $\kappa < k_0$ ). If  $\kappa' > k_0$ , it follows immediately from  $W_{k_0}(P_1) > W_{k_0}(P_2)$  that  $P_1 > P_2$  with respect to (2.9). If  $\kappa' < k_0$ , then  $W_{\kappa'}(P_1) = W_{\kappa'}(P_2)$  and  $\sum_{\kappa < \kappa'} c_{\kappa} W_{\kappa}^*(P_1) = \sum_{\kappa < \kappa'} c_{\kappa} W_{\kappa}^*(P_2)$ , implying  $\bar{W}_{\kappa'}(P_1) = \bar{W}_{\kappa'}(P_2)$ . This together with  $W_{k_0}(P_1) > W_{k_0}(P_2)$  show that  $P_1 > P_2$  with respect to (2.9). If  $\kappa' = k_0$ , then  $W_{\kappa'}(P_1) > W_{\kappa'}(P_2)$  and  $\sum_{\kappa < \kappa'} c_{\kappa} W_{\kappa}^*(P_1) = \sum_{\kappa < \kappa'} c_{\kappa} W_{\kappa}^*(P_2)$ , implying  $\bar{W}_{\kappa'}(P_1) > \bar{W}_{\kappa'}(P_2)$ . Thus  $P_1 > P_2$  with respect to (2.9).  
 The proof is similar for  $P_1 < P_2$ . □

Now we reduce the sequence (2.8) by using Proposition 2.2.5. By Proposition 2.2.5 C, we can assume that any weight function in (2.8) is  $\neq 0$ . By Proposition 2.2.2, we have rational weight functions

$$W_1^{(1)}(P), \dots, W_1^{(r_1)}(P) \quad (2.10)$$

belonging to  $W_1(P)$  which are linearly independent as linear forms in  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m$  and  $W_1(P) = \sum_{\rho=1}^{r_1} w_1^{(\rho)} W_1^{(\rho)}(P)$ . If  $r_1 < \bar{m}$ , by Proposition 2.2.2, we have again rational weight functions  $W_2^{(1)}(P), \dots, W_2^{(r_2)}(P)$  belonging to  $W_2(P)$  which are linearly independent as linear forms in  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m$  and  $W_2(P) = \sum_{\rho=1}^{r_2} w_2^{(\rho)} W_2^{(\rho)}(P)$ . Then add to the sequence (2.10),  $W_2^{(\rho)}(P)$ , such that each time when we add, rational weight functions in the obtained sequence are still linearly independent as linear forms in  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m$ . Assume that we add  $s_2$  rational weight functions to (2.10). If  $r_1 + s_2 < m$ , then continue this process by considering  $W_3(P), \dots, W_k(P)$  until the number of rational weight functions in the obtained sequence is  $m$  or we have considered all cases. Suppose that we obtain the sequence:

$$W_1^{(1)}(P), \dots, W_1^{(r_1)}(P), W_2^{(\rho_{21})}(P), \dots, W_2^{(\rho_{2s_2})}(P), \dots, W_l^{(\rho_{l1})}(P), \dots, W_l^{(\rho_{ls_l})}(P).$$

Define

$$\bar{W}_1(P) := W_1(P) = \sum_{\rho=1}^{r_1} w_1^{(\rho)} W_1^{(\rho)}(P),$$

$$\bar{W}_2(P) := w_2^{(\rho_{21})} W_2^{(\rho_{21})}(P) + \dots + w_2^{(\rho_{2s_2})} W_2^{(\rho_{2s_2})}(P),$$

⋮

$$\bar{W}_l(P) := w_l^{(\rho_{l1})} W_l^{(\rho_{l1})}(P) + \dots + w_l^{(\rho_{ls_l})} W_l^{(\rho_{ls_l})}(P).$$

We can write  $\bar{W}_2(P)$  in the form  $W_2(P) + \sum_{\rho=1}^{r_1} c_2^{(\rho)} W_1^{(\rho)}(P)$  where  $c_2^{(\rho)} \in \mathbb{R}$  ( $\rho \in \{1, \dots, r_1\}$ ). For  $\kappa' \in \{3, \dots, l\}$ , we can write  $\bar{W}_{\kappa'}(P)$  in the form

$W_{\kappa'}(P) + \sum_{\kappa < \kappa'} c_{\kappa}^{(\kappa')} W_{\kappa}^{(\kappa')}(P)$ , where  $c_{\kappa}^{(\kappa')} \in \mathbb{R}$  and each  $W_{\kappa}^{(\kappa')}(P)$  is a rational weight function belonging to  $W_{\kappa}(P)$ . By Proposition 2.2.5 B, the sequence (2.8) can be replaced by

$$\bar{W}_1(P), \bar{W}_2(P), \dots, \bar{W}_l(P). \quad (2.11)$$

The sequence (2.11) is called **regular**. Note that the sum of the ranks of all weight functions in (2.11) is  $= r_1 + s_2 + \dots + s_l \leq m$ . We will show that this sum is  $= m$  if and only if the only  $PP$  which is  $\sim 1$  is 1. First, assume that the sum of the ranks of  $\bar{W}_1(P), \bar{W}_2(P), \dots, \bar{W}_l(P)$  is  $= m$ . Let  $P := x_1^{\alpha_1} \dots x_m^{\alpha_m}$  be a  $PP$  such that  $P \sim 1$ . Then  $\bar{W}_{\kappa}(P) = \bar{W}_{\kappa}(1) = 0$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, l\}$ ), so  $W_1^{(1)}(P) = \dots = W_1^{(r_1)}(P) = W_2^{(\rho_{21})}(P) = \dots = W_2^{(\rho_{2s_2})}(P) = \dots = W_l^{(\rho_{l1})}(P) = \dots = W_l^{(\rho_{ls_l})}(P) = 0$ . This leads to  $r_1 + s_2 + \dots + s_l = m$  linearly independent equations with  $m$  unknowns  $(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m)$ , since  $W_1^{(1)}(P), \dots, W_1^{(r_1)}(P), W_2^{(\rho_{21})}(P), \dots, W_2^{(\rho_{2s_2})}(P), \dots, W_l^{(\rho_{l1})}(P), \dots, W_l^{(\rho_{ls_l})}(P)$  are linearly independent as linear forms in  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m$ . Thus  $\alpha_1 = \dots = \alpha_m = 0$ , so  $P = 1$ . Conversely, suppose that the sum of the ranks of  $\bar{W}_1(P), \bar{W}_2(P), \dots, \bar{W}_l(P)$  is  $< m$ . If we take  $W_1^{(1)}(P) = \dots = W_1^{(r_1)}(P) = W_2^{(\rho_{21})}(P) = \dots = W_2^{(\rho_{2s_2})}(P) = \dots = W_l^{(\rho_{l1})}(P) = \dots = W_l^{(\rho_{ls_l})}(P) = 0$  and introduce the expression of  $P$  in the variables  $x_1, \dots, x_m$ , then this leads to  $r_1 + s_2 + \dots + s_l < m$  equations with  $m$  unknowns  $(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m)$ . Thus there is a nontrivial solution, so there exists a  $PP$   $P \neq 1$  such that  $\bar{W}_{\kappa}(P) = 0 = \bar{W}_{\kappa}(1)$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, l\}$ ), i.e.  $P \sim 1$ . The sum of the ranks of all weight functions in (2.11) is called the **rank** of the sequence (2.11). Note also that for a regular sequence (2.11),  $l \leq m$ . The number  $l$  is the **length** of (2.11).

**Example 2.2.6.** 1) For  $m = 3$  and  $P := x_1^{\alpha_1} x_2^{\alpha_2} x_3^{\alpha_3}$ ,

define  $W_1(P) := 1 \cdot \alpha_1 + \sqrt{2} \cdot \alpha_2 + \pi \cdot \alpha_3$ ,  $W_2(P) := (1 + \sqrt{2}) \cdot \alpha_1 + \pi \cdot \alpha_2 + 0 \cdot \alpha_3$ .

Write  $W_1(P), W_2(P)$  in the form (2.6),

$$W_1(P) = w_1^{(1)}W_1^{(1)}(P) + w_1^{(2)}W_1^{(2)}(P) + w_1^{(3)}W_1^{(3)}(P),$$

where  $w_1^{(1)} = 1$ ,  $w_1^{(2)} = \sqrt{2}$ ,  $w_1^{(3)} = \pi$ ,  $W_1^{(1)}(P) = \alpha_1$ ,  $W_1^{(2)}(P) = \alpha_2$ ,  $W_1^{(3)}(P) = \alpha_3$ ,

$$W_2(P) = w_2^{(1)}W_2^{(1)}(P) + w_2^{(2)}W_2^{(2)}(P),$$

where  $w_2^{(1)} = 1 + \sqrt{2}$ ,  $w_2^{(2)} = \pi$ ,  $W_2^{(1)}(P) = \alpha_1$ ,  $W_2^{(2)}(P) = \alpha_2$ .

By the above procedure, we can replace the sequence  $W_1(P), W_2(P)$  by a regular sequence

$$\bar{W}_1(P) := W_1(P) = w_1^{(1)}W_1^{(1)}(P) + w_1^{(2)}W_1^{(2)}(P) + w_1^{(3)}W_1^{(3)}(P).$$

Note that the rank of this sequence is = the rank of  $W_1(P) = 3$ , and the length of this sequence is = 1.

2) For  $m = 4$  and  $P := x_1^{\alpha_1}x_2^{\alpha_2}x_3^{\alpha_3}x_4^{\alpha_4}$ ,

$$\text{define } W_1(P) := \pi \cdot \alpha_1 + \sqrt{2} \cdot \alpha_2 + (2\sqrt{2} + 3\pi) \cdot \alpha_3 + (-\sqrt{2} + 7\pi) \cdot \alpha_4,$$

$$W_2(P) := \sqrt{3} \cdot \alpha_1 + \pi \cdot \alpha_2 + 1 \cdot \alpha_3 + (2 + \pi) \cdot \alpha_4.$$

Write  $W_1(P), W_2(P)$  in the form (2.6),

$$W_1(P) = w_1^{(1)}W_1^{(1)}(P) + w_1^{(2)}W_1^{(2)}(P),$$

where  $w_1^{(1)} = \pi$ ,  $w_1^{(2)} = \sqrt{2}$ ,  $W_1^{(1)}(P) = \alpha_1 + 3\alpha_3 + 7\alpha_4$ ,  $W_1^{(2)}(P) = \alpha_2 + 2\alpha_3 - \alpha_4$ ,

$$W_2(P) = w_2^{(1)}W_2^{(1)}(P) + w_2^{(2)}W_2^{(2)}(P) + w_2^{(3)}W_2^{(3)}(P),$$

where  $w_2^{(1)} = \sqrt{3}$ ,  $w_2^{(2)} = \pi$ ,  $w_2^{(3)} = 1$ ,  $W_2^{(1)}(P) = \alpha_1$ ,  $W_2^{(2)}(P) = \alpha_2 + \alpha_4$ ,

$$W_2^{(3)}(P) = \alpha_3 + 2\alpha_4.$$

By the above procedure, we can replace the sequence  $W_1(P), W_2(P)$  by a regular sequence

$$\bar{W}_1(P) := W_1(P) = w_1^{(1)}W_1^{(1)}(P) + w_1^{(2)}W_1^{(2)}(P),$$

$$\bar{W}_2(P) := w_2^{(1)}W_2^{(1)}(P) + w_2^{(2)}W_2^{(2)}(P).$$

Note that the rank of this sequence is = the rank of  $\bar{W}_1(P)$  + the rank of  $\bar{W}_2(P)$

= 2+2 = 4, and the length of this sequence is = 2.

### 2.3 Comparability of ordered $PP$ 's

We say that  $P_1$  is **comparable with**  $P_2$  (denoted by  $P_1 c P_2$ ) if there exist  $\epsilon = \pm 1$  and  $\lambda, \mu \in \mathbb{Q}^+$  such that

$$P_1 \lesssim P_2^{\epsilon\lambda}, P_1 \gtrsim P_2^{\epsilon\mu}. \quad (2.12)$$

From this definition, we derive the following simple properties:

- A.  $P c P$  (reflexivity).
- B.  $(P_1 c P_2) \Rightarrow (P_2 c P_1)$  (symmetry).
- C.  $(P_1 c P_2) \Rightarrow (P_1 c P_2^{-1})$ .
- D.  $(P_1 c P_2) \Rightarrow (P_1^{-1} c P_2)$ .
- E.  $(P_1 c P_2) \wedge (P_2 \sim 1) \Rightarrow (P_1 \sim 1)$ .
- F. If  $(P_1 c P_2)$  and both  $P_1, P_2$  are  $\gtrsim 1$ , then  $\epsilon$  in (2.12) can be chosen as 1.
- G.  $(P_1 c P_2) \wedge (P_2 c P_3) \Rightarrow (P_1 c P_3)$  (transitive).
- H. For  $\alpha \in \mathbb{Q} \setminus \{0\}$ ,  $P c P^\alpha$ .
- I.  $(P_1 \sim P_2) \Rightarrow (P_1 c P_2)$ .
- J.  $(P c 1) \Leftrightarrow (P \sim 1)$ .
- K. If  $P_2^{-\alpha} < P_1 < P_2^\alpha$  for all  $\alpha \in \mathbb{Q}^+$ , then  $P_1$  and  $P_2$  are not comparable.

*Proof.* A - J are obvious. We will prove K. Suppose  $P_1 c P_2$ . Then there exist  $\epsilon = \pm 1$  and  $\lambda, \mu \in \mathbb{Q}^+$  such that  $P_1 \lesssim P_2^{\epsilon\lambda}$ ,  $P_1 \gtrsim P_2^{\epsilon\mu}$ . If  $\epsilon = 1$ , we have  $P_1 \gtrsim P_2^\mu$ , which is a contradiction. If  $\epsilon = -1$ , we have  $P_1 \lesssim P_2^{-\lambda}$ , which is also a contradiction.  $\square$

**Example 2.3.1.** For  $m = 3$  and  $P := x_1^{\alpha_1} x_2^{\alpha_2} x_3^{\alpha_3}$ , define  $W(P) := 1 \cdot \alpha_1 + 2 \cdot \alpha_2 + 3 \cdot \alpha_3$ .

We could define a regular ordering  $\Omega$  by using  $W(P)$ .

Let  $P_1 := x_1 x_2^2 x_3^3$ ,  $P_2 := x_1^3 x_2 x_3$ . We will show that  $P_1 c P_2$  but  $P_1 \not\sim P_2$ .

Note that  $W(P_1) = 1 \cdot 1 + 2 \cdot 2 + 3 \cdot 3 = 14$ ,  $W(P_2) = 1 \cdot 3 + 2 \cdot 1 + 3 \cdot 1 = 8$ .

Since  $W(P_1) \neq W(P_2)$ ,  $P_1 \not\sim P_2$ . Choose  $\epsilon = \mu = 1$ ,  $\lambda = 2$ .

Then  $W(P_2^{\epsilon\lambda}) = W(P_2^2) = 2 \cdot W(P_2) = 16$ ,  $W(P_2^{\epsilon\mu}) = W(P_2) = 8$ .

Since  $W(P_1) < W(P_2^{\epsilon\lambda})$  and  $W(P_1) > W(P_2^{\epsilon\mu})$ ,  $P_1 < P_2^{\epsilon\lambda}$  and  $P_1 > P_2^{\epsilon\mu}$ , respectively.

Thus  $P_1 c P_2$ . This shows that the converse of property I is not true.

By properties A, B and G, we have that  $c$  is an equivalent relation. Then the set of all  $PP$ 's is now decomposed into **comparability classes**, where all  $PP$ 's in the same comparability class are comparable, but the  $PP$ 's from two different comparability classes are not comparable.

In particular, the **comparability class containing 1 will be denoted by  $U$** . By property J,  $U$  consists of all  $PP$ 's which are equivalent to 1. If  $U$  contains only 1, it is called **trivial**. Otherwise, it is called **nontrivial**.

For the case  $m = 1$ , by property H, we have that every  $PP$  which is  $\neq 1$  are comparable. Then if  $U$  is nontrivial, there is only one comparability class and if  $U$  is trivial, there are two comparability classes.

**Lemma 2.3.2.** Assume that  $C_1$  and  $C_2$  are two different comparability classes which are  $\neq U$ . Let  $P_1, Q_1$  be two  $PP$ 's from  $C_1$  which are both  $> 1$  and  $P_2, Q_2$  be two  $PP$ 's from  $C_2$  which are both  $> 1$ . Then if  $Q_1 > Q_2$ , we have that for any  $\delta \in \mathbb{Q}^+$ ,  $P_1^\delta > P_2$ . Especially,  $P_1 > P_2$ .

*Proof.* Since  $P_2 c Q_2$  and both  $P_2, Q_2$  are  $\gtrsim 1$ , by property F,  $P_2 \lesssim Q_2^\lambda$  for some  $\lambda \in \mathbb{Q}^+$ . Since  $Q_2^{\lambda'} < Q_1^\lambda$ ,  $P_2 < Q_1^\lambda$ . By property H,  $Q_1 c Q_1^\lambda$ , then  $Q_1^\lambda$  is in the class  $C_1$ . Since  $Q_1^\lambda c P_1$  and both  $Q_1^\lambda, P_1$  are  $\gtrsim 1$ , by property F,  $Q_1^\lambda \lesssim P_1^\mu$  for some  $\mu \in \mathbb{Q}^+$ . Since  $P_2 < Q_1^\lambda$  and  $Q_1^\lambda \lesssim P_1^\mu$ ,  $P_2 < P_1^\mu$ . If  $P_2 \gtrsim P_1^\delta$ , then it follows that  $P_1 c P_2$  which is a contradiction. Thus  $P_2 < P_1^\delta$ .  $\square$

We will say that the class  $C_1$  is **higher than** the class  $C_2$  (denoted by  $C_1 > C_2$ ) if for any  $PP$   $P_1$  from  $C_1$  and  $PP$   $P_2$  from  $C_2$  such that  $P_1 > 1$  and  $P_2 \gtrsim 1$ , we



have  $P_1 > P_2$ . Obviously, this relationship is transitive. Note that if there exists a comparability class  $C \neq U$ , then  $C$  must contain a  $PP$   $P$  which is  $\approx 1$ ; by property H, we can assume that  $P > 1$ . Thus we have always  $C > U$ .

**Lemma 2.3.3.** Assume that  $k \geq 1$  and  $C_0, C_1, \dots, C_k$  are  $k + 1$  comparability classes such that  $C_0 < C_1 < \dots < C_k$ . Choose an arbitrary  $P_\kappa$  from each  $C_\kappa$  ( $\kappa \in \{0, 1, \dots, k\}$ ). Let  $P^* := P_0^{\beta_0} P_1^{\beta_1} \dots P_k^{\beta_k}$ , with  $\beta_\kappa \in \mathbb{Q}$  ( $\kappa \in \{0, 1, \dots, k\}$ ). If  $\beta_k \neq 0$ , we have  $P^* \in C_k$  and  $P^* > 1$  or  $P^* < 1$  according as  $P_k^{\beta_k} > 1$  or  $P_k^{\beta_k} < 1$ .

*Proof.* Without loss of generality, we can assume that

- 1)  $P_\kappa > 1$  ( $\kappa \in \{0, 1, \dots, k\}$ ) since we can replace  $P_\kappa$  by  $P_\kappa^{-1}$ ,
- 2)  $\beta_k > 0$  since we can replace  $P^*$  by  $P^{*-1}$ ,
- 3)  $\beta_\kappa \neq 0$  ( $\kappa \in \{0, 1, \dots, k\}$ ) since we can leave out those  $C_\kappa$  for which  $\beta_\kappa = 0$ .

Let  $\beta := \sum_{\kappa=0}^k |\beta_\kappa|$  and  $\epsilon := \frac{\beta_k}{2\beta}$ . For  $\kappa \in \{0, 1, \dots, k-1\}$ , since  $C_\kappa < C_k$ ,  $P_\kappa < P_k^\epsilon$ .

And since  $P_k > 1$ ,  $P_k^{-\epsilon} < 1$ . But  $1 < P_\kappa$ , so  $P_k^{-\epsilon} < P_\kappa$ . Then  $P_k^{-\epsilon} < P_\kappa < P_k^\epsilon$ . If  $\beta_\kappa > 0$ ,  $P_k^{-\epsilon\beta_\kappa} < P_\kappa^{\beta_\kappa} < P_k^{\epsilon\beta_\kappa}$ . If  $\beta_\kappa < 0$ ,  $P_k^{\epsilon\beta_\kappa} < P_\kappa^{\beta_\kappa} < P_k^{-\epsilon\beta_\kappa}$ . Thus  $P_k^{-\epsilon|\beta_\kappa|} < P_\kappa^{\beta_\kappa} < P_k^{\epsilon|\beta_\kappa|}$ . Then  $P_k^{-\epsilon|\beta_0|} P_k^{-\epsilon|\beta_1|} \dots P_k^{-\epsilon|\beta_{k-1}|} < P_0^{\beta_0} P_1^{\beta_1} \dots P_{k-1}^{\beta_{k-1}} < P_k^{\epsilon|\beta_0|} P_k^{\epsilon|\beta_1|} \dots P_k^{\epsilon|\beta_{k-1}|}$ , i.e.  $P_k^{\epsilon(\beta_k - \beta)} < \frac{P^*}{P_k^{\beta_k}} < P_k^{\epsilon(\beta - \beta_k)}$ , so  $P_k^{\epsilon(\beta_k - \beta) + \beta_k} < P^* < P_k^{\epsilon(\beta - \beta_k) + \beta_k}$ . Note that

$\epsilon(\beta_k - \beta) + \beta_k = \epsilon\beta_k + \frac{\beta_k}{2}$  and  $\epsilon(\beta - \beta_k) + \beta_k = \frac{3\beta_k}{2} - \epsilon\beta_k$ . Since  $P_k > 1$  and  $\epsilon, \beta_k > 0$ ,

it follows that  $P_k^{\beta_k} > 1$  and  $P_k^{-\epsilon\beta_k} < 1$ . Then  $P_k^{\beta_k/2} < P_k^{\epsilon\beta_k + \beta_k/2} = P_k^{\epsilon(\beta_k - \beta) + \beta_k} < P^* < P_k^{\epsilon(\beta - \beta_k) + \beta_k} = P_k^{3\beta_k/2 - \epsilon\beta_k} < P_k^{3\beta_k/2}$ . Thus  $P^* \in C_k$ . Finally, if  $P_k^{\beta_k} > 1$ , then  $P_k^{\beta_k/2} > 1$ . But  $P^* > P_k^{\beta_k/2}$ , so  $P^* > 1$ . And if  $P_k^{\beta_k} < 1$ , then  $P_k^{3\beta_k/2} < 1$ . But  $P^* < P_k^{3\beta_k/2}$ , so  $P^* < 1$ .  $\square$

**Proposition 2.3.4.** Assume that  $k \geq 1$  and  $C_0, C_1, \dots, C_k$  are  $k + 1$  comparability classes such that  $C_0 < C_1 < \dots < C_k$ . If  $U$  is nontrivial, take  $C_0 = U$ ; otherwise, assume  $C_0 > U$ . Choose an element  $P_\kappa \neq 1$  from each  $C_\kappa$  ( $\kappa \in \{0, 1, \dots, k\}$ ). Then for any  $\beta_\kappa \in \mathbb{Q}$  ( $\kappa \in \{0, 1, \dots, k\}$ ), not all zero, we have that the relation

$$P_0^{\beta_0} P_1^{\beta_1} \dots P_k^{\beta_k} = 1 \quad (2.13)$$

is impossible.

*Proof.* Without loss of generality, we can assume that  $\beta_k \neq 0$ . Otherwise, we can leave out  $C_k$ . Suppose that  $P_0^{\beta_0} P_1^{\beta_1} \dots P_k^{\beta_k} = 1$ . Then  $P_k^{\beta_k} = P_0^{-\beta_0} P_1^{-\beta_1} \dots P_{k-1}^{-\beta_{k-1}}$ . By Lemma 2.3.3, it follows that  $P_k^{\beta_k} = P_0^{-\beta_0} P_1^{-\beta_1} \dots P_{k-1}^{-\beta_{k-1}}$  is an element of  $U$  or  $C_\kappa$  for some  $\kappa \in \{0, 1, \dots, k-1\}$ . And by property H, we obtain that  $P_k^{\beta_k}$  is an element of  $C_k$ , which is a contradiction.  $\square$

Note that the relation (2.13) is always possible for  $k \geq m$ . To see this, suppose that  $P_0^{\beta_0} P_1^{\beta_1} \dots P_k^{\beta_k} = 1$ . Introducing the expressions of  $P_0, P_1, \dots, P_k$  in the variables  $x_1, \dots, x_m$  leads to  $m$  equations with  $k+1 > m$  unknowns. Then there is a nontrivial solution  $\beta_\kappa \in \mathbb{Q}$  ( $\kappa \in \{0, 1, \dots, k\}$ ), not all zero, such that  $P_0^{\beta_0} P_1^{\beta_1} \dots P_k^{\beta_k} = 1$ . It follows that the number  $k$  in Proposition 2.3.4 must be  $\leq m-1$ . Thus we have that the total number of the comparability classes is  $\leq m+1$ , and even  $\leq m$  if  $U$  is nontrivial.

**Theorem 2.3.5.** Any regular ordering of algebraic  $PP$ 's can be obtained by the lexicographic principle from a regular ordered sequence of weight functions.

*Proof.* First, we will prove in the special case that  $U$  is trivial and that, besides  $U$ , there is only one comparability class  $C$ . Then all  $x_\mu$  ( $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ) are comparable. We can assume that  $x_\mu > 1$  ( $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ) since we can replace each  $x_\mu$  with  $x_\mu^{-1}$  by an m-r-transformation. If  $m = 1$ , define  $W(P) := \alpha_1$ . Since  $x_1 > 1$ , it follows that for any  $\alpha > 0$ ,  $x_1^\alpha > 1$  and  $x_1^{-\alpha} < 1$ . Then we have that for any  $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{Q}$ ,  $x_1^\alpha > x_1^\beta \Leftrightarrow x_1^{\alpha-\beta} > 1 \Leftrightarrow \alpha - \beta > 0 \Leftrightarrow \alpha > \beta \Leftrightarrow W(x_1^\alpha) > W(x_1^\beta)$ . Dually,  $x_1^\alpha < x_1^\beta \Leftrightarrow W(x_1^\alpha) < W(x_1^\beta)$ . And  $x_1^\alpha \sim x_1^\beta \Leftrightarrow x_1^{\alpha-\beta} \sim 1 \Leftrightarrow \alpha - \beta = 0 \Leftrightarrow \alpha = \beta \Leftrightarrow W(x_1^\alpha) = W(x_1^\beta)$ . Thus  $W(P)$  satisfies the requirements of Theorem 2.3.5. So

we can assume that  $m > 1$ . For  $\kappa \in \{2, \dots, m\}$ , we claim that there is no  $\sigma \in \mathbb{Q}$  such that  $x_1^\sigma \sim x_\kappa$ . To see this, suppose that there exists  $\sigma \in \mathbb{Q}$  such that  $x_1^\sigma \sim x_\kappa$ . Then  $x_\kappa x_1^{-\sigma} \sim 1$ , so  $x_\kappa x_1^{-\sigma}$  is an element of  $U$ . Since  $U$  is trivial,  $x_\kappa x_1^{-\sigma} = 1$ . This contradicts the fact that  $x_1, x_\kappa$  are independent.

Since for  $\kappa \in \{2, \dots, m\}$ ,  $x_\kappa \subset x_1$ , there exist  $\lambda, \mu \in \mathbb{Q}^+$  such that  $x_1^\lambda < x_\kappa < x_1^\mu$ . Then  $x_1^{\lambda-\mu} < 1$ . Since  $x_1 > 1$ , it follows that  $\lambda - \mu < 0$ , so  $\lambda < \mu$ . Let  $\gamma_\kappa \in \mathbb{R}$  be the least upper bound of the set  $\{\sigma \in \mathbb{Q} \mid x_1^\sigma < x_\kappa\}$ . For  $\sigma \in \mathbb{Q}$ , if  $\gamma_\kappa < \sigma$ , then  $x_\kappa < x_1^\sigma$ . We show that if  $\sigma < \gamma_\kappa$ , then  $x_1^\sigma < x_\kappa$ . Put  $\delta := \gamma_\kappa - \sigma > 0$ . Thus there exists  $\sigma' \in \mathbb{Q}$  such that  $\gamma_\kappa - \frac{\delta}{2} < \sigma'$  and  $x_1^{\sigma'} < x_\kappa$ . Since  $\sigma = \gamma_\kappa - \delta < \gamma_\kappa - \frac{\delta}{2} < \sigma'$  and  $x_1 > 1$ ,  $x_1^\sigma < x_1^{\sigma'} < x_\kappa$ . For  $\kappa = 1$ , we set  $\gamma_1 := 1$ . It is convenient to establish next the following result.

**Lemma 2.3.6.** Assume that  $U$  is trivial and that, besides  $U$ , there is only one comparability class  $C$ . Moreover, assume that  $x_\mu > 1$  ( $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ) and  $m > 1$ . For  $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ , let  $\gamma_\kappa$  be the constant defined above and  $\alpha_\kappa \in \mathbb{Q}$  be such that  $\sum_{\kappa=1}^m |\alpha_\kappa| > 0$ . For  $P := x_1^{\alpha_1} \dots x_m^{\alpha_m}$ , put  $L(P) := \sum_{\kappa=1}^m \alpha_\kappa \gamma_\kappa$ . Let  $u, v \in \mathbb{Q}$  be such that  $u < L(P) < v$ . Then  $x_1^u < P < x_1^v$ .

*Proof of Lemma 2.3.6.* If  $\sum_{\kappa=2}^m |\alpha_\kappa| = 0$ , then  $\alpha_\kappa = 0$  for all  $\kappa \in \{2, \dots, m\}$ , so  $P = x_1^{\alpha_1}$  and  $L(P) = \alpha_1$ . From  $u < \alpha_1 < v$  and  $x_1 > 1$ , it follows that  $x_1^u < x_1^{\alpha_1} < x_1^v$ . So we can assume that  $\sum_{\kappa=2}^m |\alpha_\kappa| > 0$ . Set  $A := \sum_{\kappa=1}^m |\alpha_\kappa|$ . Let  $\epsilon \in \mathbb{Q}$  be such that  $0 < \epsilon < \frac{L(P) - u}{A}$ ,  $\sigma_1 := 1$  and for  $\kappa \in \{2, \dots, m\}$ , let  $\sigma_\kappa \in \mathbb{Q}$  be such that  $\gamma_\kappa - \epsilon < \sigma_\kappa < \gamma_\kappa$ , if  $\alpha_\kappa > 0$ ,  $\gamma_\kappa < \sigma_\kappa < \gamma_\kappa + \epsilon$  if  $\alpha_\kappa < 0$ ,  $\sigma_\kappa = 0$  if  $\alpha_\kappa = 0$ . Put  $u_1 := \sum_{\kappa=1}^m \alpha_\kappa \sigma_\kappa$ . For  $\kappa \in \{2, \dots, m\}$ , we have  $\alpha_\kappa \sigma_\kappa < \alpha_\kappa \gamma_\kappa$  if  $\alpha_\kappa \neq 0$ , and so  $u_1 < L(P)$ . And  $L(P) - u_1 = \sum_{\alpha_\kappa > 0} \alpha_\kappa (\gamma_\kappa - \sigma_\kappa) - \sum_{\alpha_\kappa < 0} \alpha_\kappa (\sigma_\kappa - \gamma_\kappa) < \sum_{\alpha_\kappa > 0} |\alpha_\kappa| \epsilon + \sum_{\alpha_\kappa < 0} |\alpha_\kappa| \epsilon = A\epsilon < L(P) - u$ , so  $u < u_1$ . For  $\kappa \in \{2, \dots, m\}$ , if  $\alpha_\kappa > 0$ , then  $\sigma_\kappa < \gamma_\kappa$ , and so  $x_1^{\sigma_\kappa} < x_\kappa$ . Then  $x_1^{\alpha_\kappa \sigma_\kappa} < x_\kappa^{\alpha_\kappa}$ . If  $\alpha_\kappa < 0$ , then  $\gamma_\kappa < \sigma_\kappa$ , and so  $x_\kappa < x_1^{\sigma_\kappa}$ . Then

$x_1^{\alpha_\kappa \sigma_\kappa} < x_\kappa^{\alpha_\kappa}$ . Thus  $x_1^{u_1} = x_1^{\alpha_1 \sigma_1 + \dots + \alpha_m \sigma_m} < x_1^{\alpha_1} \dots x_m^{\alpha_m} = P$ . Since  $u < u_1$  and  $x_1 > 1$ ,  $x_1^u < x_1^{u_1}$ . Therefore  $x_1^u < P$ . To show that  $P < x_1^v$ , consider  $P^{-1} = x_1^{-\alpha_1} \dots x_m^{-\alpha_m}$ . Then we have  $L(P^{-1}) = \sum_{\kappa=1}^m (-\alpha_\kappa) \gamma_\kappa = -\sum_{\kappa=1}^m \alpha_\kappa \gamma_\kappa = -L(P)$ . Since  $L(P) < v$ ,  $-v < -L(P) = L(P^{-1})$ . By the first inequality, substituting  $P$  by  $P^{-1}$  and  $u$  by  $-v$ , we get  $x_1^{-v} < P^{-1}$ . Therefore  $P < x_1^v$ .  $\square$

We now show that  $\gamma_1, \dots, \gamma_m$  are  $\mathbb{Q}$ -linearly independent. Suppose that there exist  $\beta_\kappa \in \mathbb{Z}$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ), not-all zero, such that  $\sum_{\kappa=1}^m \beta_\kappa \gamma_\kappa = 0$ . Let  $P^* := x_1^{\beta_1} \dots x_m^{\beta_m}$ . Then  $L(P^*) = 0$ . For any  $p \in \mathbb{Q}^+$ , since  $-p < L(P^*) < p$ , by Lemma 2.3.6, it follows that  $x_1^{-p} < P^* < x_1^p$ . By property K, we have  $P^*$  and  $x_1$  are not comparable. Thus  $P^*$  must belong to  $U$ . Since  $U$  is trivial,  $P^* = 1$ . So  $\beta_\kappa = 0$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ), which is a contradiction.

Observe that if  $L(P) > 0$ , by choosing  $p \in \mathbb{Q}$ ,  $0 < p < L(P)$ , then by Lemma 2.3.6,  $P > x_1^p > 1$ . Similarly, if  $L(P) < 0$ , then  $P < 1$ . We prove that for any  $PP$ 's  $P_1, P_2$ , we have  $P_1 > P_2$  if  $L(P_1) > L(P_2)$ ,  $P_1 < P_2$  if  $L(P_1) < L(P_2)$ ,  $P_1 \sim P_2$  if  $L(P_1) = L(P_2)$ . Let  $P_1 := x_1^{\alpha_1} \dots x_m^{\alpha_m}$ ,  $P_2 := x_1^{\beta_1} \dots x_m^{\beta_m}$ . Then  $P_1 P_2^{-1} = x_1^{\alpha_1 - \beta_1} \dots x_m^{\alpha_m - \beta_m}$ . Note that  $L(P_1) - L(P_2) = \sum_{\kappa=1}^m \alpha_\kappa \gamma_\kappa - \sum_{\kappa=1}^m \beta_\kappa \gamma_\kappa = \sum_{\kappa=1}^m (\alpha_\kappa - \beta_\kappa) \gamma_\kappa = L(P_1 P_2^{-1})$ . Thus  $L(P_1) > L(P_2) \Rightarrow L(P_1) - L(P_2) > 0 \Rightarrow L(P_1 P_2^{-1}) > 0 \Rightarrow P_1 P_2^{-1} > 1 \Rightarrow P_1 > P_2$ . And dually,  $L(P_1) < L(P_2) \Rightarrow P_1 < P_2$ . Assume that  $L(P_1) = L(P_2)$ . Then  $\sum_{\kappa=1}^m \alpha_\kappa \gamma_\kappa = \sum_{\kappa=1}^m \beta_\kappa \gamma_\kappa$ . Since  $\gamma_1, \dots, \gamma_m$  are  $\mathbb{Q}$ -linearly independent, it follows that  $\alpha_\kappa = \beta_\kappa$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ). Thus  $P_1 = P_2$ , so  $P_1 \sim P_2$ . We see that the requirements of Theorem 2.3.5 are satisfied if we define  $W(P) := L(P)$ . Then Theorem 2.3.5 is proved in the special case.

Now, we consider the general case. For  $m = 1$ , if  $U$  is trivial, this is a special case which has been already proved above. Otherwise, if  $U$  is nontrivial, then every  $P = x_1^{\alpha_1}$  belongs to  $U$  and there is no ordering at all. We can choose here  $W(P) := 0$ .

We will prove the remaining case of Theorem 2.3.5 by induction. Assume that Theorem 2.3.5 has already been proved for all  $m' < m$ .

Let  $C_0 < C_1 < \dots < C_s$  be the ordered sequence of all comparability classes. If  $U$  is nontrivial, take  $C_0 = U$ . Otherwise, assume  $C_0 > U$ . If  $s < 1$ , this is a special case which has been already proved. Then we assume that  $s \geq 1$ .

We will show that if  $P_1, P_2$  belong to  $C_0$ , then  $P_1P_2 = 1$  or  $P_1P_2$  belongs to  $C_0$ . This is clear if  $P_1 = 1$  or  $P_2 = 1$ . So we assume that  $P_1 \neq 1$  and  $P_2 \neq 1$ . Let  $P$  be an element of  $C_1$  such that  $P > 1$  and  $p \in \mathbb{Q}^+$ . Then  $P^p > 1$  and  $P^{-p} < 1$ . If  $P_1 > 1$ , from  $C_0 < C_1$ ,  $P_1 < P^p$ . Since  $P^{-p} < 1$ ,  $P^{-p} < P_1$ . So we have  $P^{-p} < P_1 < P^p$ . If  $P_1 < 1$ , then  $P_1^{-1} > 1$ . From  $C_0 < C_1$ ,  $P_1^{-1} < P^p$ , so  $P^{-p} < P_1$ . Since  $P_1 < 1 < P^p$ , we also have  $P^{-p} < P_1 < P^p$ . Similarly,  $P^{-p} < P_2 < P^p$ . Thus  $P^{-2p} < P_1P_2 < P^{2p}$ . Then for any  $\alpha \in \mathbb{Q}^+$ ,  $P^{-\alpha} = P^{-2(\alpha/2)} < P_1P_2 < P^{2(\alpha/2)} < P^\alpha$ . By property K,  $P_1P_2$  and  $P$  are not comparable, so  $P_1P_2$  does not belong to  $C_1$ . But  $P_1P_2 < P^\alpha$  for any  $\alpha \in \mathbb{Q}^+$ , then  $P_1P_2$  belongs to a class  $< C_1$ . Thus if  $P_1P_2 \neq 1$ , we have that  $P_1P_2$  belongs to  $C_0$ .

For  $P := x_1^{\alpha_1} \dots x_m^{\alpha_m}$ , we introduce the set of linear forms

$$S(u) := \alpha_1 u_1 + \dots + \alpha_m u_m$$

with indeterminates  $u_1, \dots, u_m$ . We will call  $P$  and  $S(u)$  **associated**. Obviously, the product of two  $PP$ 's is associated to the sum of their associated linear forms.

Let  $T$  be the set of all linear forms associated with elements of  $C_0$  and  $L_1, \dots, L_t$  be the maximal number of linearly independent forms from  $T$  chosen in an arbitrary way. Note that  $t \leq m$ . Then any form  $L \in T$  can be written as  $L = \sum_{\tau=1}^t \rho_\tau L_\tau$  where  $\rho_\tau \in \mathbb{Q}$ .

For  $\tau \in \{1, \dots, t\}$ , denote the  $PP$  associated with  $L_\tau$  by  $P_\tau$ . For  $\beta_\tau \in \mathbb{Z}$  ( $\tau \in \{1, \dots, t\}$ ) such that  $P_1^{\beta_1} \dots P_t^{\beta_t} = 1$ , we have  $\beta_1 L_1 + \dots + \beta_t L_t = 0$ . This leads to  $t$  linearly independent equations with  $t$  unknowns  $(\beta_1, \dots, \beta_t)$ , since  $L_1, \dots, L_t$  are the maximal number of linearly independent forms from  $T$ . Thus  $\beta_1 = \dots = \beta_t = 0$ . Let  $P$  be an element of  $C_0$  and  $L$  its associated linear form. Since  $L = \rho_1 L_1 + \dots + \rho_t L_t = 0$  where  $\rho_\tau \in \mathbb{Q}$  ( $\tau \in \{1, \dots, t\}$ ),  $P = P_1^{\rho_1} \dots P_t^{\rho_t}$ .

By an m-r-transformation, we can transform  $P_1, \dots, P_t$  into  $x_1, \dots, x_t$ , respectively. Then we can assume that  $C_0 \equiv [x_1, \dots, x_t] \setminus \{1\}$ , if  $U$  is trivial and  $C_0 \equiv [x_1, \dots, x_t]$ , if  $U$  is nontrivial. For  $P := x_1^{\alpha_1} \dots x_m^{\alpha_m}$ , we can write  $P = \bar{P}' \bar{P}$  where  $\bar{P}' = x_1^{\alpha_1} \dots x_t^{\alpha_t} \in [x_1, \dots, x_t]$  and  $\bar{P} = x_{t+1}^{\alpha_{t+1}} \dots x_m^{\alpha_m} \in [x_{t+1}, \dots, x_m]$ . We see that  $\bar{P}' = 1$  or  $\bar{P}'$  is an element of  $C_0$ . We show that  $\bar{P} = 1$  or  $\bar{P}$  belongs to the same comparability class  $C > C_0$  as  $P$ . Suppose that  $\bar{P} \neq 1$ . Then  $\alpha_\mu \neq 0$  for some  $\mu \in \{t+1, \dots, m\}$ , so  $\bar{P}$  does not belong to  $C_0$ . Obviously,  $\bar{P}$  does not belong to  $U$ , if  $U$  is trivial. Thus  $\bar{P}$  belongs to some comparability class  $C > C_0$ . If  $\bar{P}' = 1$ , then  $P = \bar{P}$ , so  $P$  belongs to  $C$ . If  $\bar{P}'$  is an element of  $C_0$ , by Lemma 2.3.3,  $P$  belongs to  $C$  and it follows also that  $P > 1$  or  $P < 1$  according as  $\bar{P} > 1$  or  $\bar{P} < 1$ . Note that for any  $PP$ 's  $P_1, P_2$ ,  $\overline{P_1/P_2} = \bar{P}_1/\bar{P}_2$ . Then we have that  $P_1 > P_2$  or  $P_1 < P_2$  according as  $\bar{P}_1 > \bar{P}_2$  or  $\bar{P}_1 < \bar{P}_2$ . Let  $\bar{\Omega}$  be the ordering of  $[x_{t+1}, \dots, x_m]$  given by  $\Omega$  and  $\bar{W}(\bar{P}')$  the weight function which generates the ordering in  $[x_1, \dots, x_t]$  if  $U$  is trivial and  $\bar{W}(\bar{P}') := 0$  if  $U$  is nontrivial. Observe that if  $U$  is trivial, the existence of  $\bar{W}(\bar{P}')$  has been proved as the special case of Theorem 2.3.5. By the induction hypothesis,  $\bar{\Omega}$  can be generated by a regular sequence of weight functions,  $\bar{W}_1(\bar{P}), \bar{W}_2(\bar{P}), \dots, \bar{W}_k(\bar{P})$ . Put  $W_\kappa(P) := \bar{W}_\kappa(\bar{P})$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ ) and  $W_{k+1}(P) := \bar{W}(\bar{P}')$ .

We now claim that  $\Omega$  is generated by the sequence

$$W_1(P), \dots, W_{k+1}(P). \quad (2.14)$$

Let  $P_1, P_2$  be any  $PP$ 's,

**Case 1.**  $W_\kappa(P_1) = W_\kappa(P_2)$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k+1\}$ ). Then  $\bar{W}_\kappa(\bar{P}_1) = \bar{W}_\kappa(\bar{P}_2)$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ ) and  $\bar{W}(\bar{P}_1') = \bar{W}(\bar{P}_2')$ . Thus  $\bar{P}_1 \sim \bar{P}_2$  and  $\bar{P}_1' \sim \bar{P}_2'$ , so  $P_1 = \bar{P}_1' \bar{P}_1 \sim \bar{P}_2' \bar{P}_2 = P_2$ .

**Case 2.**  $W_\kappa(P_1) \neq W_\kappa(P_2)$  for some  $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k+1\}$ . Let  $k_0 := \min\{\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k+1\} \mid W_\kappa(P_1) \neq W_\kappa(P_2)\}$ . Then  $W_\kappa(P_1) = W_\kappa(P_2)$  ( $\kappa < k_0$ ).

**Case 2.1.**  $W_{k_0}(P_1) > W_{k_0}(P_2)$ . If  $k_0 \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ , then  $\bar{W}_\kappa(\bar{P}_1) = \bar{W}_\kappa(\bar{P}_2)$  ( $\kappa < k_0$ ) and  $\bar{W}_{k_0}(\bar{P}_1) > \bar{W}_{k_0}(\bar{P}_2)$ . Thus  $\bar{P}_1 > \bar{P}_2$ , so  $P_1 > P_2$ . If  $k_0 = k+1$ , then  $W_\kappa(P_1) = W_\kappa(P_2)$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ ) and  $W_{k+1}(P_1) > W_{k+1}(P_2)$ , i.e.  $\bar{W}_\kappa(\bar{P}_1) = \bar{W}_\kappa(\bar{P}_2)$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ ) and  $\bar{W}(\bar{P}_1') > \bar{W}(\bar{P}_2')$ . Thus  $\bar{P}_1 \sim \bar{P}_2$  and  $\bar{P}_1' > \bar{P}_2'$ , so  $P_1 = \bar{P}_1' \bar{P}_1 > \bar{P}_2' \bar{P}_2 = P_2$ .

**Case 2.2.**  $W_{k_0}(P_1) < W_{k_0}(P_2)$ . Similar arguments as in Case 2.1 show that  $P_1 < P_2$ .

Cases 1 and 2 prove the claim.

Note that the rational weight functions belonging to  $W_{k+1}(P)$  depend only on  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_t$ . But the rational weight functions belonging to  $W_\kappa(P)$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ ) depend on  $\alpha_{t+1}, \dots, \alpha_m$ , so they are independent of  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_t$ . Thus (2.14) is regular, and Theorem 2.3.5 is proved.  $\square$

## 2.4 Structure of sequences of weight functions

We assume now that the ordering  $\Omega$  in  $[x_1, \dots, x_m]$  is generated by the sequence of the rank  $r$ ,

$$W_1(P), \dots, W_k(P). \quad (2.15)$$

We assume that (2.15) is **irreducible**, i.e. none of  $W_\kappa(P)$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ ) is a linear combination of the rational weight functions belonging to  $W_1(P), \dots, W_{\kappa-1}(P)$ .

We claim that there exists a sequence of  $r$  rational weight functions

$$R_1(P), \dots, R_r(P) \quad (2.16)$$

and a sequence of positive integers  $r_1 < \dots < r_k = r$  such that

$$W_\kappa(P) = \sum_{\tau=1}^{\tau_\kappa} w_\kappa^{(\tau)} R_\tau(P) \quad (\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}), \quad (2.17)$$

where the set of linear forms (2.16) is linearly independent and each of the sets,  $\{w_1^{(1)}, \dots, w_1^{(r_1)}\}$ ,  $\{w_2^{(r_1+1)}, \dots, w_2^{(r_2)}\}$ ,  $\dots$ ,  $\{w_k^{(r_{k-1}+1)}, \dots, w_k^{(r_k)}\}$  are linearly independent with respect to  $\mathbb{Q}$ .

In order to prove the claim, we begin by writing  $W_1(P)$  in the form (2.6) as in Proposition 2.2.2, i.e.  $W_1(P) = \sum_{\tau=1}^{r_1} w_1^{(\tau)} R_\tau(P)$ , where  $w_1^{(1)}, \dots, w_1^{(r_1)}$  are linearly independent real numbers. By Proposition 2.2.2 and Proposition 2.2.4,  $R_1(P), \dots, R_{r_1}(P)$  form a basis of the set of all rational weight functions belonging to  $W_1(P)$ . Consider the set of all rational weight functions belonging to  $W_1(P)$  or to  $W_2(P)$  and construct a basis for this set by adding new basis elements to  $R_1(P), \dots, R_{r_1}(P)$ . In this way, we obtain additional basis elements  $R_{r_1+1}(P), \dots, R_{r_2}(P)$ . Since (2.15) is irreducible, it follows that  $r_2 > r_1$ . Then we can write

$$W_2(P) = \sum_{\tau=1}^{r_2} w_2^{(\tau)} R_\tau(P), \quad (2.18)$$

where  $w_2^{(\tau)} \in \mathbb{R}$  ( $\tau \in \{1, \dots, r_2\}$ ). We next show that  $w_2^{(r_1+1)}, \dots, w_2^{(r_2)}$  are linearly independent. Suppose that they are not linearly independent. So we can eliminate one of them in (2.18), obtaining the corresponding representation of  $W_2(P)$  with at most  $r_2 - r_1 - 1$  additional basis elements. But, by our construction,  $r_2$  is the rank of the set of all rational weight functions belonging to  $W_1(P)$  or to  $W_2(P)$ . This is



a contradiction. The proof for other  $\{w_3^{(r_2+1)}, \dots, w_3^{(r_3)}\}, \dots, \{w_k^{(r_{k-1}+1)}, \dots, w_k^{(r_k)}\}$  is similar.

If we assume that the sequence (2.15) is not only irreducible but even regular, then, with  $r_0 := 0$ , (2.17) becomes

$$W_\kappa(P) = \sum_{\tau=r_{\kappa-1}+1}^{r_\kappa} w_\kappa^{(\tau)} R_\tau(P) \quad (\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}).$$

Write  $R_\tau(P)$  ( $\tau \in \{1, \dots, r\}$ ) in (2.16) as linear form in  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m$ ,  $R_\tau(P) = \sum_{\mu=1}^m c_{\tau\mu} \alpha_\mu$  ( $\tau \in \{1, \dots, r\}$ ) where  $c_{\tau\mu} \in \mathbb{Q}$  ( $\tau \in \{1, \dots, r\}$ ,  $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ). If  $r < m$ , since  $R_1(P), \dots, R_r(P)$  are linearly independent, we can introduce  $m - r$  linear forms  $R_\nu(P) = \sum_{\mu=1}^m c_{\nu\mu} \alpha_\mu$  ( $\nu \in \{r+1, \dots, m\}$ ) where  $c_{\nu\mu} \in \mathbb{Q}$  ( $\nu \in \{r+1, \dots, m\}$ ,  $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ) such that  $\det[c_{\nu\mu}] \neq 0$ . If we now apply the  $m-r$ -transformation,  $x_\mu := y_1^{c_{1\mu}} \dots y_m^{c_{m\mu}}$  ( $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ), then  $PP(2.1)$  becomes  $x_1^{\alpha_1} \dots x_m^{\alpha_m} = y_1^{\beta_1} \dots y_m^{\beta_m}$  where  $\beta_\nu = \sum_{\mu=1}^m c_{\nu\mu} \alpha_\mu$  ( $\nu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ). We see that  $R_\nu(P)$  ( $\nu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ) become simple linear forms in  $\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m$ , i.e.  $R_\nu(P) = \beta_\nu$  ( $\nu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ). Assume that we have applied the above transformation and the new variables are denoted again by  $x_1, \dots, x_m$ . Then  $R_\tau(P) = \alpha_\tau$  ( $\tau \in \{1, \dots, r\}$ ). Thus for the case that the sequence (2.15) is irreducible, we have  $W_\kappa(P) = \sum_{\tau=1}^{r_\kappa} w_\kappa^{(\tau)} \alpha_\tau$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ ), and for the case that the sequence (2.15) is regular and indeed also irreducible, we have  $W_\kappa(P) = \sum_{\tau=r_{\kappa-1}+1}^{r_\kappa} w_\kappa^{(\tau)} \alpha_\tau$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ ), with  $r_0 := 0$ .

**Example 2.4.1.** Let  $m = 3$  and  $P := x_1^{\alpha_1} x_2^{\alpha_2} x_3^{\alpha_3}$ .

1) Define  $W(P) := 1 \cdot \alpha_1 + 2 \cdot \alpha_2 + 3 \cdot \alpha_3$ . Assume that the ordering  $\Omega$  in  $[x_1, x_2, x_3]$  is generated by the sequence  $W(P)$ . It is clear that this sequence is regular.

Write  $W(P)$  in the form (2.6),

$$W(P) = w_1^{(1)} R_1^{(1)}(P), \text{ where } w_1^{(1)} = 1, R_1^{(1)}(P) = 1 \cdot \alpha_1 + 2 \cdot \alpha_2 + 3 \cdot \alpha_3.$$

Define  $R_2(P) := 0 \cdot \alpha_1 + 1 \cdot \alpha_2 + 0 \cdot \alpha_3$ ,  $R_3(P) := 0 \cdot \alpha_1 + 0 \cdot \alpha_2 + 1 \cdot \alpha_3$ .

Note that  $\det \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} = 1 \neq 0$ . Now, we apply the above m-r-transformation, let

$x_1 := y_1^1 y_2^0 y_3^0 = y_1$ ,  $x_2 := y_1^2 y_2^1 y_3^0 = y_1^2 y_2$ ,  $x_3 := y_1^3 y_2^0 y_3^1 = y_1^3 y_3$ . So  $PP(2.1)$  becomes  $x_1^{\alpha_1} x_2^{\alpha_2} x_3^{\alpha_3} = y_1^{\alpha_1} (y_1^2 y_2)^{\alpha_2} (y_1^3 y_3)^{\alpha_3} = y_1^{\alpha_1 + 2\alpha_2 + 3\alpha_3} y_2^{\alpha_2} y_3^{\alpha_3}$ . If we denote  $y_1, y_2, y_3$  again by  $x_1, x_2, x_3$ , respectively, then by the above procedure, we have  $W(P) = \alpha_1$ .

2) Define  $W_1(P) := 1 \cdot \alpha_1 + 2 \cdot \alpha_2 + 3 \cdot \alpha_3$ ,  $W_2(P) := 1 \cdot \alpha_1 + \sqrt{2} \cdot \alpha_2 + \pi \cdot \alpha_3$ .

Assume that the ordering  $\Omega$  in  $[x_1, x_2, x_3]$  is generated by the sequence  $W_1(P), W_2(P)$ .

Write  $W_1(P)$  in the form (2.6),

$W_1(P) = w_1^{(1)} R_1(P)$ , where  $w_1^{(1)} = 1$ ,  $R_1(P) = 1 \cdot \alpha_1 + 2 \cdot \alpha_2 + 3 \cdot \alpha_3$ .

Then we can write  $W_2(P) = w_2^{(1)} R_1(P) + w_2^{(2)} R_2(P) + w_2^{(3)} R_3(P)$ ,

where  $w_2^{(1)} = \frac{\pi}{3}$ ,  $w_2^{(2)} = 1 - \frac{\pi}{3}$ ,  $w_2^{(3)} = \sqrt{2} - \frac{2\pi}{3}$ ,  $R_2(P) = \alpha_1$ ,  $R_3(P) = \alpha_2$ .

We see that  $w_2^{(2)}, w_2^{(3)}$  are linearly independent with respect to  $\mathbb{Q}$  and  $R_1(P), R_2(P), R_3(P)$  are linearly independent as linear forms in  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3$ . Thus we can replace the sequence  $W_1(P), W_2(P)$  by a regular sequence

$\bar{W}_1(P) := W_1(P) = w_1^{(1)} R_1(P)$ ,

$\bar{W}_2(P) := w_2^{(2)} R_2(P) + w_2^{(3)} R_3(P)$ .

Note that  $R_1(P) = 1 \cdot \alpha_1 + 2 \cdot \alpha_2 + 3 \cdot \alpha_3$ ,  $R_2(P) = 1 \cdot \alpha_1 + 0 \cdot \alpha_2 + 0 \cdot \alpha_3$ ,  $R_3(P) = 0 \cdot \alpha_1 + 1 \cdot \alpha_2 + 0 \cdot \alpha_3$ . Now, we apply the above m-r-transformation, let  $x_1 :=$

$y_1^1 y_2^1 y_3^0 = y_1 y_2$ ,  $x_2 := y_1^2 y_2^0 y_3^1 = y_1^2 y_3$ ,  $x_3 := y_1^3 y_2^0 y_3^0 = y_1^3$ . So  $PP(2.1)$  becomes

$x_1^{\alpha_1} x_2^{\alpha_2} x_3^{\alpha_3} = (y_1 y_2)^{\alpha_1} (y_1^2 y_3)^{\alpha_2} (y_1^3)^{\alpha_3} = y_1^{\alpha_1 + 2\alpha_2 + 3\alpha_3} y_2^{\alpha_1} y_3^{\alpha_2}$ . If we denote  $y_1, y_2, y_3$  again

by  $x_1, x_2, x_3$ , respectively, then by the above procedure, we have  $\bar{W}_1(P) = \alpha_1$ ,

$\bar{W}_2(P) = w_2^{(2)} \alpha_2 + w_2^{(3)} \alpha_3$ .

**Theorem 2.4.2.** Let the ordering  $\Omega$  in  $[x_1, \dots, x_m]$  be generated by an irreducible sequence of weight functions of the length  $k$  and the rank  $r$ :

$$W_1(P), \dots, W_k(P), \quad (2.19)$$

and assume that  $s \geq 0$  and  $U = C_0 < C_1 < \dots < C_s$  is the complete sequence of comparability classes corresponding to  $\Omega$ . Then  $k = s$  and

$$C_\sigma = \{P \mid W_\kappa(P) = 0 \ (\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k - \sigma\}), W_{k-\sigma+1}(P) \neq 0\} \quad (\sigma \in \{0, \dots, s\}). \quad (2.20)$$

*Proof.* In order to prove Theorem 2.4.2, we introduce and discuss certain sets of  $PP$ 's which are connected with the sequence (2.19). Define  $U_\kappa := \{P \mid W_1(P) = \dots = W_\kappa(P) = 0\}$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ ),  $U_0 := [x_1, \dots, x_m]$ ,  $U_{k+1} := \emptyset$  and  $D_\kappa := U_{\kappa-1} - U_\kappa$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k+1\}$ ). By the definition,  $D_\kappa = \{P \mid W_1(P) = \dots = W_{\kappa-1}(P) = 0, W_\kappa(P) \neq 0\}$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ ) and  $D_{k+1} = U_k$ . Since  $W_\kappa(P^{-1}) = -W_\kappa(P)$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ ), it follows that for  $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k+1\}$ , if  $P \in D_\kappa$ , then also  $P^{-1} \in D_\kappa$ .

We show that  $PP$ 's  $\in$  the same  $D_\kappa$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k+1\}$ ) if and only if they are comparable. Let  $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k+1\}$  and  $P, Q \in D_\kappa$ . If  $\kappa = k+1$ , then  $D_{k+1} = U_k$ , and so  $W_1(P) = \dots = W_k(P) = W_1(Q) = \dots = W_k(Q) = 0$ . Thus  $P \sim 1$  and  $Q \sim 1$ , so  $P, Q$  and  $1$  are comparable. It follows that  $D_{k+1} = U_k = U = C_0$ . Hence (2.20) holds for  $\sigma = 0$ . If  $\kappa < k+1$ , without loss of generality, we can assume that  $P > 1$  and  $Q > 1$  since we can replace  $P, Q$  by  $P^{-1}, Q^{-1}$ , respectively. It follows that  $W_1(P) = \dots = W_{\kappa-1}(P) = W_1(Q) = \dots = W_{\kappa-1}(Q) = 0$ ,  $W_\kappa(P) > 0$ ,  $W_\kappa(Q) > 0$ . We will find  $\lambda, \mu \in \mathbb{Q}^+$  such that  $P^\lambda < Q < P^\mu$ . If  $W_\kappa(P) = W_\kappa(Q)$ , choose  $\lambda = \frac{1}{2}$ ,  $\mu = 2$ , then  $\lambda W_\kappa(P) < W_\kappa(Q) < \mu W_\kappa(P)$ . So  $W_\kappa(P^\lambda) < W_\kappa(Q) < W_\kappa(P^\mu)$ .

Thus  $P^\lambda < Q < P^\mu$ . If  $W_\kappa(P) < W_\kappa(Q)$ , then choosing  $\lambda = 1$  gives  $P^\lambda = P < Q$ . Note that there exists  $\mu \in \mathbb{Q}^+$  such that  $W_\kappa(Q) < \mu W_\kappa(P) = W_\kappa(P^\mu)$ , so  $Q < P^\mu$ . If  $W_\kappa(P) > W_\kappa(Q)$ , then choosing  $\mu = 1$  gives  $Q < P = P^\mu$ . Note that there exists  $\lambda \in \mathbb{Q}^+$  such that  $W_\kappa(P^\lambda) = \lambda W_\kappa(P) < W_\kappa(Q)$ , so  $P^\lambda < Q$ . Thus  $P$  and  $Q$  are comparable.

Now assume that  $1 < P \in D_\kappa$  and  $1 < Q \in D_\lambda$  where  $1 \leq \lambda < \kappa \leq k$ . We see that  $W_1(P) = \dots = W_{\lambda-1}(P) = W_1(Q) = \dots = W_{\lambda-1}(Q) = 0$  and  $W_\lambda(P) = 0 < W_\lambda(Q)$ . Let  $\delta \in \mathbb{Q}^+$ . Since  $W_\kappa(Q^\delta) = \delta W_\kappa(Q)$  and  $W_\kappa(Q^{-\delta}) = -\delta W_\kappa(Q)$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ ),  $W_1(Q^\delta) = \dots = W_{\lambda-1}(Q^\delta) = W_1(Q^{-\delta}) = \dots = W_{\lambda-1}(Q^{-\delta}) = 0$ , it follows that  $W_\lambda(Q^{-\delta}) < 0 = W_\lambda(P)$  and  $W_\lambda(P) = 0 < W_\lambda(Q^\delta)$ , so  $Q^{-\delta} < P < Q^\delta$ . By property K,  $P$  and  $Q$  are not comparable.

Thus each  $D_\kappa$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k+1\}$ ) is identical with exactly one of the comparability class  $C_\sigma$  ( $\sigma \in \{0, \dots, s\}$ ). Since  $[x_1, \dots, x_m] = \bigcup_{\kappa=1}^{k+1} D_\kappa$ , it follows that for any  $\sigma \in \{0, \dots, s\}$ , there exists exactly one  $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k+1\}$  such that  $C_\sigma = D_\kappa$ . Thus  $k = s$ . From the last paragraph, we have that  $D_\kappa < D_\lambda$  if  $1 \leq \lambda < \kappa \leq k$ . Then  $U = D_{k+1} < D_k < \dots < D_1$ . Thus  $C_\kappa = D_{k-\kappa+1}$  ( $\kappa \in \{0, \dots, k\}$ ). Hence  $C_\kappa = \{P \mid W_1(P) = \dots = W_{k-\kappa}(P) = 0, W_{k-\kappa+1}(P) \neq 0\}$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ ), and Theorem 2.4.2 is proved.  $\square$

From Theorem 2.4.2, since the rank of (2.19) is  $r$ ,  $U = C_0$  is characterized by  $r$  linear homogeneous equations between the exponents  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m$ . Then the dimension of  $U$  is  $= m - r$ . More generally, if we let  $r_0 := 0$ ,  $r_{k+1} := m$ , then for  $\kappa \in \{0, \dots, k+1\}$ , the dimension of each  $U_\kappa$  is  $= m - r_\kappa$ . Furthermore, for  $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k+1\}$ , the dimension of  $D_\kappa$  is  $= (m - r_{\kappa-1}) - (m - r_\kappa) = r_\kappa - r_{\kappa-1}$ . Finally, for  $\kappa \in \{0, \dots, k\}$ , since  $C_\kappa = D_{k-\kappa+1}$ , the dimension of  $C_\kappa$  is  $= r_{k-\kappa+1} - r_{k-\kappa}$ .

## 2.5 Extreme aggregates of terms

We consider now the set of all polynomials in  $x_1, \dots, x_m$  with coefficients from an arbitrary field  $K$ . Define an **algebraic** polynomial as the sum of the terms  $F := \sum_{\nu} c_{\nu} P_{\nu}$  where  $c_{\nu} \in K \setminus \{0\}$  and  $P_{\nu}$  are algebraic  $PP$ 's. Then we will say that any term  $c_{\nu} P_{\nu}$  and the corresponding  $PP$ ,  $P_{\nu}$  are **contained in  $F$**  and write  $c_{\nu} P_{\nu} \in F$ ,  $P_{\nu} \in F$ . If we write the polynomial  $F$  in the form  $\sum c_{\nu} P_{\nu}$ , then  $P_{\nu}$  are assumed to be distinct  $PP$ 's. In particular, if all  $PP$ 's in  $F$  are rational (integer), we will call  $F$  **rational (integer)**. **From now on, by polynomial we mean an algebraic polynomial, unless otherwise specified.**

Let  $\Lambda$  be a mapping of each polynomial  $F$  upon a certain aggregate of its terms,  $\bar{F}$ . Assume that  $\Lambda$  has the following properties:

- i. There is no  $PP$ , contained both in  $\bar{F}$  and  $F - \bar{F}$ .
- ii. If  $F \neq 0$ , then  $\bar{F} \neq 0$ .
- iii. For any polynomials  $F_1, F_2$ , we have  $\overline{F_1 F_2} = \bar{F}_1 \bar{F}_2$ .

Then  $\bar{F}$  will be called an **extreme aggregate** of  $F$ .

We easily see that for any  $PP$   $P$  and  $c \in K$ ,  $\overline{cP} = cP$  and for a monomial polynomial  $F$ ,  $\bar{F} = F$ .

A polynomial which is not a monomial, i.e. contains at least two different  $PP$ 's, will be called a **proper polynomial**.

In the following,  $P, P_1, P_2, P_3$  will denote general algebraic  $PP$ 's, unless otherwise specified.

Using our mapping  $\Lambda$  we will now define an ordering  $\Omega$  of  $PP$ 's induced by  $\Lambda$  and prove that  $\Omega$  is a regular ordering.

If  $P_1, P_2$  are  $PP$ 's, from the above postulates, it follows that either  $\overline{P_1 + P_2} = P_1 + P_2$  or  $\overline{P_1 + P_2} = P_1$  or  $\overline{P_1 + P_2} = P_2$ , and this is a complete disjunction. If

$\overline{P_1 + P_2} = P_1 + P_2$ , we will say that  $P_1$  and  $P_2$  are **equivalent** (denoted by  $P_1 \sim P_2$ ,  $P_2 \sim P_1$ ). If  $\overline{P_1 + P_2} = P_1$ , we will say that  $P_1$  is **higher than**  $P_2$  and  $P_2$  is **lower than**  $P_1$  (denoted by  $P_1 > P_2$ ,  $P_2 < P_1$ ). And similarly if  $\overline{P_1 + P_2} = P_2$ .

The ordering  $\Omega$  defined in this way satisfies obviously the postulates I and II of the definition of a regular ordering. To prove that the postulate IV is satisfied, Assume  $P_1 > P_2$ . Then  $\overline{P_1 P_3 + P_2 P_3} = (\overline{P_1 + P_2})\bar{P}_3 = P_1 P_3$ . Thus  $P_1 P_3 > P_2 P_3$ . This is the assertion of the postulate IV. We will prove that the postulate III is also satisfied later.

**Proposition 2.5.1.** Assume that  $F$  contains the term  $c_1 P_1 + c_2 P_2$  where  $P_1 \neq P_2$ . Let  $G := (P_1 + P_2)F$ . We see that the term  $P_1 P_2$  in  $G$  has exactly the coefficient  $c_1 + c_2$ . Then

A. If  $P_1 \sim P_2$  and  $c_1 P_1 \in \bar{F}$ , then  $c_2 P_2 \in \bar{F}$ .

*Proof.* Suppose that  $c_2 P_2 \notin \bar{F}$ . From  $P_1 \sim P_2$ , we have  $\bar{G} = (\overline{P_1 + P_2})\bar{F} = (P_1 + P_2)\bar{F}$ . Then  $\bar{G}$  contains  $P_1 P_2$  with a coefficient  $c_1$ . But if  $P_1 P_2$  occurs in  $\bar{G}$ , it must have the same coefficient  $c_1 + c_2$  as in  $G$ . This is a contradiction.  $\square$

B. If  $P_1 > P_2$ , then  $c_2 P_2 \notin \bar{F}$ . Dually, if  $P_1 < P_2$ , then  $c_1 P_1 \notin \bar{F}$ .

*Proof.* Suppose that  $c_2 P_2 \in \bar{F}$ . From  $P_1 > P_2$ , we have  $\bar{G} = (\overline{P_1 + P_2})\bar{F} = P_1 \bar{F}$ . Then  $\bar{G}$  contains  $P_1 P_2$  with a coefficient  $c_2$  which is again  $\neq c_1 + c_2$ .  $\square$

C. If  $c_1 P_1 \in \bar{F}$  and  $c_2 P_2 \in \bar{F}$ , then  $P_1 \sim P_2$ .

*Proof.* If  $P_1 > P_2$  or  $P_1 < P_2$ , then by B,  $c_2 P_2 \notin \bar{F}$  or  $c_1 P_1 \notin \bar{F}$ , respectively.  $\square$

D. If  $c_1 P_1 \in \bar{F}$  but  $c_2 P_2 \notin \bar{F}$ , then  $P_1 > P_2$ .

*Proof.* If  $P_1 \sim P_2$ , this contradicts A. If  $P_1 < P_2$ , this contradicts B.  $\square$

Now we will prove that  $\Omega$  satisfies the postulate III of the definition of a regular ordering. Let  $F := (P_1 + P_2)(P_2 + P_3) = P_1P_2 + P_1P_3 + P_2^2 + P_2P_3$ . If  $P_1 > P_2$  and  $P_2 > P_3$ , then  $\bar{F} = (\overline{P_1 + P_2})(\overline{P_2 + P_3}) = P_1P_2$ . Since  $P_1P_2 \in \bar{F}$  but  $P_2P_3 \notin \bar{F}$ , by Proposition 2.5.1 D, it follows that  $P_1P_2 > P_2P_3$ . Multiplying by  $1/P_2$ , we have  $P_1 > P_3$  since the postulate IV is satisfied. If  $P_1 > P_2$  and  $P_2 \sim P_3$ , then  $\bar{F} = (\overline{P_1 + P_2})(\overline{P_2 + P_3}) = P_1(P_2 + P_3) = P_1P_2 + P_1P_3$ . It follows again that  $P_1P_2 > P_2P_3$ , so  $P_1 > P_3$ . Finally, if  $P_1 \sim P_2$  and  $P_2 > P_3$ , then  $\bar{F} = (\overline{P_1 + P_2})(\overline{P_2 + P_3}) = (P_1 + P_2)P_2 = P_1P_2 + P_2^2$ . It follows again that  $P_1P_2 > P_2P_3$ , so  $P_1 > P_3$ . Thus III is proved. Moreover, properties A - D in Section 2.1 remain valid because they follow from the postulates I - IV. Hence  $\Omega$  is a regular ordering of  $PP$ 's.

For  $c_1 \neq 0$  and  $c_2 \neq 0$ , we will say that  $c_1P_1$  is **higher than** ( $>$ ) or **equivalent** to ( $\sim$ ) or **lower than** ( $<$ )  $c_2P_2$  according as  $P_1 > P_2$  or  $P_1 \sim P_2$  or  $P_1 < P_2$ .

**Theorem 2.5.2.** A mapping  $\Lambda$  as defined above corresponds to a regular ordering  $\Omega$  of  $PP$ 's such that  $\bar{F}$  is always the aggregate of all highest terms of  $F$  in the sense of  $\Omega$ . Any regular ordering  $\Omega$  can be induced by a mapping  $\Lambda$  which is uniquely determined by  $\Omega$ .

*Proof.* Most assertions of Theorem 2.5.2 follow from what we did above. Now, we have only to prove that any given  $\Omega$  is induced by the mapping  $\Lambda$  obtained by defining  $\bar{F}$  as the aggregate of all highest terms of  $F$ . It is clear that properties i and ii hold. We have to prove that property iii also holds.

Denote the highest terms of  $F_1$  by  $a'_\kappa Q'_\kappa$  and all other terms by  $b'_\nu T'_\nu$ . Similarly, the highest terms of  $F_2$  may be  $a''_\lambda Q''_\lambda$  and all other terms  $b''_\mu T''_\mu$ . Then we can write

$$F_1 = \bar{F}_1 + \sum_{\nu} b'_{\nu} T'_{\nu} \text{ with } \bar{F}_1 = \sum_{\kappa} a'_{\kappa} Q'_{\kappa},$$

$$F_2 = \bar{F}_2 + \sum_{\mu} b''_{\mu} T''_{\mu} \text{ with } \bar{F}_2 = \sum_{\lambda} a''_{\lambda} Q''_{\lambda},$$

where the sum over  $\nu$  and  $\mu$  can be empty, and

$$\forall(\kappa, \kappa_1, \nu), Q'_{\kappa} \sim Q'_{\kappa_1}, Q'_{\kappa} > T'_{\nu},$$

$$\forall(\lambda, \lambda_1, \mu), Q''_{\lambda} \sim Q''_{\lambda_1}, Q''_{\lambda} > T''_{\mu}.$$

Then we have

$$F_1 F_2 = \bar{F}_1 \bar{F}_2 + \sum_{\kappa, \mu} a'_{\kappa} b''_{\mu} Q'_{\kappa} T''_{\mu} + \sum_{\lambda, \nu} a''_{\lambda} b'_{\nu} Q''_{\lambda} T'_{\nu} + \sum_{\nu, \mu} b'_{\nu} b''_{\mu} T'_{\nu} T''_{\mu},$$

$$\bar{F}_1 \bar{F}_2 = \sum_{\kappa, \lambda} a'_{\kappa} a''_{\lambda} Q'_{\kappa} Q''_{\lambda}.$$

Note that  $\bar{F}_1 \bar{F}_2 \neq 0$  since  $\bar{F}_1 \neq 0$  and  $\bar{F}_2 \neq 0$ . By the postulates IV and IV' of the definition of a regular ordering, we have

$$\forall(\kappa, \kappa_1, \lambda, \lambda_1), Q'_{\kappa} Q''_{\lambda} \sim Q'_{\kappa_1} Q''_{\lambda_1},$$

$$\forall(\kappa, \kappa_1, \lambda, \lambda_1, \mu, \nu), Q'_{\kappa} Q''_{\lambda} > Q'_{\kappa_1} T''_{\mu}, Q'_{\kappa} Q''_{\lambda} > Q''_{\lambda_1} T'_{\nu}, Q'_{\kappa} Q''_{\lambda} > T'_{\nu} T''_{\mu}.$$

Thus  $\overline{F_1 F_2} = \bar{F}_1 \bar{F}_2$ , so property iii is proved.

Finally, let  $\Omega_{\Lambda}$  be the ordering induced by the mapping  $\Lambda$  obtained by defining  $\bar{F}$  as the aggregate of all highest terms of  $F$  in the sense of  $\Omega$ . We will show that  $\Omega = \Omega_{\Lambda}$ . For any  $PP$ 's  $P_1, P_2$ , we have that



$P_1 \sim P_2$  in the sense of  $\Omega \Leftrightarrow \overline{P_1 + P_2} = P_1 + P_2 \Leftrightarrow P_1 \sim P_2$  in the sense of  $\Omega_\Lambda$ ,

$P_1 > P_2$  in the sense of  $\Omega \Leftrightarrow \overline{P_1 + P_2} = P_1 \Leftrightarrow P_1 > P_2$  in the sense of  $\Omega_\Lambda$ ,

and dually,  $P_1 < P_2$  in the sense of  $\Omega \Leftrightarrow P_1 < P_2$  in the sense of  $\Omega_\Lambda$ .

Therefore  $\Omega = \Omega_\Lambda$ . □

Theorem 2.5.2 simply says that given an ordering  $\Omega$ , its induced mapping  $\Lambda$  is uniquely determined and vice versa.

The number of the weight functions in a regular sequence, i.e. the length of this sequence, defining a regular ordering  $\Omega$  depends only on  $\Omega$ . If this number is 1, we will call that the ordering  $\Omega$  and the mapping  $\Lambda$  induced by  $\Omega$  are **monobaric**.

For the case  $m = 1$ , from the beginning of the proof of Theorem 2.3.5, we see that any ordering of  $[x_1]$  is always monobaric.

Note that there are orderings which are not monobaric. Then it is important for algebraic discussions to prove that it is quite sufficient to consider only monobaric orderings and mappings as long as we have to do with a fixed finite set of  $PP$ 's.

Let  $S$  be a finite set of different  $PP$ 's. A given ordering  $\Omega$  induces the order relation between the elements of  $S$ , which we can call the **projection of  $\Omega$  on  $S$**  (denoted by  $\Omega_S$ ). Let  $S^*$  be the set of all polynomials formed with the  $PP$ 's from the set  $S$  with arbitrary coefficients from a field  $K$ . Then  $\Omega$  induces for each of the polynomials from  $S^*$ , a mapping which will be denoted by  $\Lambda_S$ .

**Theorem 2.5.3.** Let  $\Omega$  be a regular ordering,  $\Lambda$  the corresponding mapping of  $\Omega$ ,  $S$  a finite set of  $PP$ 's,  $S^*$ ,  $\Omega_S$  and  $\Lambda_S$  are defined above. Then there exists a monobaric ordering  $\Omega'$  such that if the corresponding mapping is denoted by  $\Lambda'$ , we have  $\Omega_S = \Omega'_S$  and  $\Lambda_S = \Lambda'_S$ .

*Proof.* By the postulates IV and IV' of the definition of a regular ordering, it follows that the relations  $P_1 > P_2$ ,  $P_1 < P_2$ ,  $P_1 \sim P_2$  can be written as  $P_1/P_2 > 1$ ,  $P_1/P_2 < 1$ ,  $P_1/P_2 \sim 1$ . Then it suffices to consider the effect of  $\Omega$  on those quotients of the  $PP$ 's from  $S$  which are  $\gtrsim 1$ . Denote the sequence of these quotients by  $Q_\nu$  ( $\nu \in \{1, \dots, N\}$ ). Assume that the ordering  $\Omega$  corresponds a regular sequence of weight functions, of the length  $d$ ,

$$W_1(P), W_2(P), \dots, W_d(P). \quad (2.21)$$

Note that  $W_\kappa(Q_\nu) \geq 0$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, d\}$ ,  $\nu \in \{1, \dots, N\}$ ). It suffices to show that, if  $d > 1$ , the sequence (2.21) can be replaced with a sequence containing less than  $d$  terms and corresponding to an ordering with the same effect on  $Q_\nu$  ( $\nu \in \{1, \dots, N\}$ ).

Reordering  $Q_\nu$  ( $\nu \in \{1, \dots, N\}$ ), if necessary, we can assume that for  $N_1, N_2 \geq 0$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} W_1(Q_\nu) &> 0 \quad (\nu \in \{1, \dots, N_1\}), & W_1(Q_\nu) &= 0 \quad (\nu > N_1), \\ W_2(Q_\nu) &> 0 \quad (\nu \in \{N_1 + 1, \dots, N_1 + N_2\}), & W_2(Q_\nu) &= 0 \quad (\nu > N_1 + N_2). \end{aligned}$$

If  $N_1 = 0$ , we can obviously drop  $W_1(P)$  and reduce  $d$ . If  $N_1 > 0$ , let  $W^*(P) := W_1(P) + W_2(P)$ . Then  $W^*(Q_\nu) > 0$  ( $\nu \in \{1, \dots, N_1 + N_2\}$ ). Thus we can replace both weight functions  $W_1(P), W_2(P)$  by  $W^*(P)$  and reduce again  $d$  by 1. Hence Theorem 2.5.3 is proved.  $\square$

For  $c \in K \setminus \{0\}$ , we assign generally to  $cP$  the weight of  $P$ :

$$W(cP) := W(P).$$

A polynomial in which all terms have the same weight is called **isobaric**. We assign to each isobaric polynomial  $F$  the weight of any of its terms:

$$W(F) := W(P) \quad (P \in F).$$

If a polynomial  $F$  is not isobaric, then it can be decomposed into isobaric aggregates of terms,

$$F = \varphi_0 + \varphi_1 + \cdots + \varphi_k,$$

where each  $\varphi_\kappa$  ( $\kappa \in \{0, \dots, k\}$ ) is isobaric and

$$W(\varphi_0) > W(\varphi_1) > \cdots > W(\varphi_k).$$

Then for a not isobaric polynomial  $F$ , we define  $W(F)$  as the maximum weight of all of its terms:

$$W(F) := W(\varphi_0).$$

The above decomposition will be called simply **the decomposition into isobaric aggregates**, where the single aggregates are always ordered according to decreasing weights. Then the isobaric aggregate  $\varphi_0$  will be called the **leading aggregate** of  $F$ . It is clear that  $W(F) = W(\varphi_0) > W(F - \varphi_0)$ .

## 2.6 Convex bodies and polyhedrons

First, we recall some properties of convex bodies and polyhedrons, which will be used later.

We usually denote a general point of the  $m$ -dimensional space  $\mathbb{R}^m$  by  $A$  and its coordinates by  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m$ .

A bounded and closed set of points,  $C$ , is called a **convex body** if it has the **convexity property**, i.e. if  $A_1, A_2$  are two arbitrary points of  $C$ , then all points of the rectilinear segment  $\langle A_1, A_2 \rangle$  also belong to  $C$ . The **dimension of  $C$** ,  $\dim C$ , is

defined to be the smallest integer  $d$  such that  $C$  lies in a linear  $d$ -dimensional manifold.

If  $d = 0$ , then  $C$  consists only one point.

A **direction**  $\eta$  in  $\mathbb{R}^m$  is defined by  $m$  real numbers  $w_1, \dots, w_m$ , not all zero, with the condition that  $\eta$  remains the same if  $w_1, \dots, w_m$  are multiplied by the same positive factor. If we multiply  $w_1, \dots, w_m$  by  $-1$ , we obtain the **opposite direction** to  $\eta$ ,  $-\eta$ .

For any point  $A \in \mathbb{R}^m$ , denote  $L_\eta(A) := \sum_{\mu=1}^m w_\mu \alpha_\mu$ . Note that for  $A', A'' \in \mathbb{R}^m$ , we have  $L_\eta(A' + A'') = L_\eta(A') + L_\eta(A'')$ .

An  $(m - 1)$ -dimensional plane normal to the direction  $\eta$  is the set of points  $A$  satisfying an equation

$$L_\eta(A) = d, \tag{2.22}$$

where  $d$  is an arbitrary real number. If we define  $d$  by  $d := \max_{A \in C} L_\eta(A)$ , then the plane (2.22) is called the **support plane of  $C$  in the direction  $\eta$**  (denoted by  $E_\eta$ ). It is uniquely determined by the direction  $\eta$ . A convex body is uniquely determined by the set of all its supporting plane.

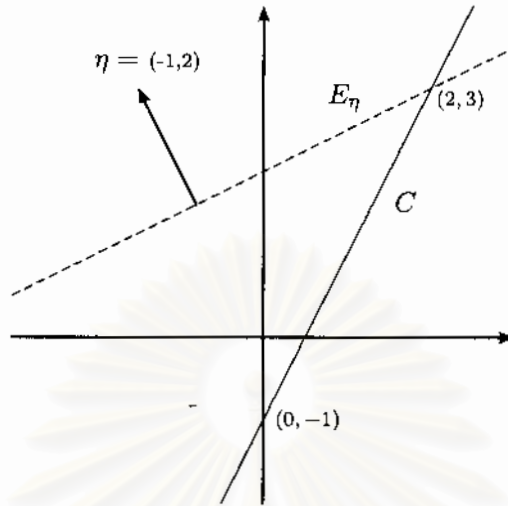
Denote  $C_\eta := E_\eta \cap C$ . Then  $C_\eta$  is again a convex body and if  $C_\eta \subsetneq C$ , we have  $\dim C_\eta < \dim C$ . The set  $C_\eta$  will be called a **linear boundary component of  $C$** .

**Example 2.6.1.** Put  $C := \{(\alpha_1, \alpha_2) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid 0 \leq \alpha_1 \leq 2, -1 \leq \alpha_2 \leq 3, \alpha_2 = 2\alpha_1 - 1\}$ .

Then  $C$  is a convex body in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ . Let  $\eta := (-1, 2)$  be a direction in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ . Then

for any  $(\alpha_1, \alpha_2) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ ,  $L_\eta(\alpha_1, \alpha_2) = -\alpha_1 + 2\alpha_2$ . Note that  $\max_{(\alpha_1, \alpha_2) \in C} L_\eta(\alpha_1, \alpha_2) = \max_{(\alpha_1, \alpha_2) \in C} \{-\alpha_1 + 2(2\alpha_1 - 1)\} = \max_{(\alpha_1, \alpha_2) \in C} \{3\alpha_1 - 2\} = 3 \cdot 2 - 2 = 4$ .

Thus  $E_\eta = \{(\alpha_1, \alpha_2) \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mid -\alpha_1 + 2\alpha_2 = 4\}$  and  $C_\eta = \{(2, 3)\}$ .



If  $\dim C = d > 0$ , then the **total boundary** of  $C$  (from the  $m$ -dimensional 'point of view'),  $\partial C$ , is  $\bigcup_{\eta} C_{\eta}$ .

If  $\dim C_{\eta} = 0$ , then  $C_{\eta}$  contains only one point and this point will be called a **summit** of  $C$ .

A linear boundary component of  $C_{\eta}$  is also a linear boundary component of  $C$ .

Assume  $C$  is a  $d$ -dimensional convex body. If there exists only a finite number of different linear boundary components of  $C$ ,  $C$  is called a **convex polyhedron**. For an  $m$ -dimensional convex polyhedron  $C$ , there always exists a finite set of different directions  $\eta_1, \dots, \eta_N$  such that  $\partial C = \bigcup_{\nu=1}^N C_{\eta_{\nu}}$ , where each  $C_{\eta_{\nu}}$  ( $\nu \in \{1, \dots, N\}$ ) has the dimension  $m - 1$  and different  $C_{\eta_{\nu}}$  ( $\nu \in \{1, \dots, N\}$ ) have in common at most a linear boundary component of a dimension  $< m - 1$ . These  $\eta_{\nu}$  ( $\nu \in \{1, \dots, N\}$ ) are uniquely determined.

If we have a finite set of points  $A_1, \dots, A_N$ , then the 'smallest' convex polyhedron which contains  $A_1, \dots, A_N$  is the set of all points representable in the form  $A = \sum_{\nu=1}^N t_{\nu} A_{\nu}$  where  $t_1, \dots, t_N \geq 0$  and  $t_1 + \dots + t_N = 1$ . This polyhedron will be denoted by  $\langle A_1, \dots, A_N \rangle$ .

All summits of  $\langle A_1, \dots, A_N \rangle$  belong to the set of the points  $\{A_1, \dots, A_N\}$ .

A convex polyhedron has a finite number of summits  $S_1, \dots, S_N$  and can be always form as  $\langle S_1, \dots, S_N \rangle$ .

Assume  $C'$  and  $C''$  are two convex bodies in  $\mathbb{R}^m$ . Then  $\{A' + A'' \mid A' \in C', A'' \in C''\}$  is also a convex body which is denoted by  $C' + C''$ .

If  $A' = (\alpha'_1, \dots, \alpha'_m) \in C'$ ,  $A'' = (\alpha''_1, \dots, \alpha''_m) \in C''$  and  $\eta = (w_1, \dots, w_m)$  is a direction in  $\mathbb{R}^m$ , then we have  $L_\eta(A') - d' \leq 0$  and  $L_\eta(A'') - d'' \leq 0$ , where  $d' = \max_{A' \in C'} L_\eta(A')$  and  $d'' = \max_{A'' \in C''} L_\eta(A'')$ . Thus  $L_\eta(A' + A'') - (d' + d'') = (L_\eta(A') + L_\eta(A'')) - (d' + d'') = (L_\eta(A') - d') + (L_\eta(A'') - d'') \leq 0$ . Note that the equality holds if and only if  $A' \in C'_\eta$  and  $A'' \in C''_\eta$ . For any direction  $\eta$ , it follows that  $L_\eta(A) = d' + d''$  is a supporting plane for  $C' + C''$  and

$$(C' + C'')_\eta = C'_\eta + C''_\eta. \quad (2.23)$$

It is easy to see that if both  $C'$  and  $C''$  are polyhedrons, then  $C' + C''$  is also a polyhedron. Because in this case there are only a finite number of different ones among the terms  $C'_\eta + C''_\eta$  on the right of (2.23).

Consider in particular the case  $m = 2$ , of a two-dimensional plane. Then convex polyhedrons become convex polygons. If in particular a convex polygon is a segment  $\langle P_1, P_2 \rangle$ , then it has to be considered as consisting of two segments of equal length but opposite directions,  $\overrightarrow{P_1 P_2} \cup \overleftarrow{P_1 P_2}$ .

We provide now our convex two-dimensional polygons with the orientation, going along the boundary in the positive sense with respect to the inside. By (2.23), it follows that the oriented sides of the polygon  $C' + C''$  can only have the directions occurring in the sides of  $C'$  and of  $C''$ . Then we obtain  $C' + C''$  by decomposing  $C'$  and  $C''$  into the single oriented sides and reordering these sides in the sense of increasing angle with a fixed direction.

Now, it follows that if a triangle  $T$  is the sum of two convex polygons  $T_1, T_2$ , none of which reduces to a single point, then both  $T_1$  and  $T_2$  must also be triangles similar to  $T$ .

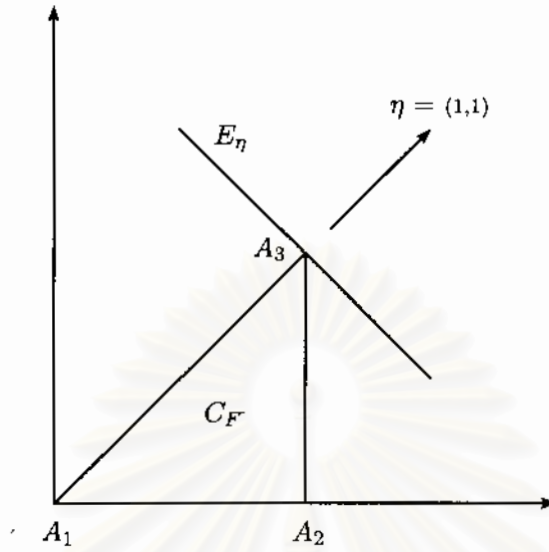
## 2.7 The baric polyhedron

A total view of all possible extreme aggregates in a given polynomial can be obtained by using the **baric polyhedrons** which we are going to introduce now.

Assume  $F$  is an algebraic polynomial in the form  $F = \sum_{\nu=1}^n c_\nu P_\nu$  where  $c_\nu \in K \setminus \{0\}$  ( $\nu \in \{1, \dots, n\}$ ) and  $P_\nu$  ( $\nu \in \{1, \dots, n\}$ ) are distinct algebraic  $PP$ 's of the form (2.1). Any  $PP$  of the form (2.1) corresponds to a **representative point**,  $A$ , of  $\mathbb{R}^m$  with coordinates  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m$ . We also define  $A$  to be the representative point of  $cP$  with  $c \in K \setminus \{0\}$ . Then in this way  $n$  terms of  $F$  correspond to  $n$  different points  $A_1, \dots, A_n$ . The polyhedron,  $C_F := \langle A_1, \dots, A_n \rangle$ , will be called the **baric polyhedron of the polynomial  $F$** .

For a direction  $\eta$ , if the linear boundary component  $(C_F)_\eta$  contains the representative points of some terms  $cP$  of  $F$ , then we will say that these terms **lie on**  $(C_F)_\eta$  and write this as  $cP \in (C_F)_\eta$ ,  $P \in (C_F)_\eta$ .

**Example 2.7.1.** For  $m = 2$ , let  $P_1 := 1$ ,  $P_2 := x_1$ ,  $P_3 := x_1 x_2$  and  $F := P_1 + P_2 + P_3$ . Then the representative points of  $P_1, P_2, P_3$  are  $A_1 := (0, 0)$ ,  $A_2 := (1, 0)$ ,  $A_3 := (1, 1)$ , respectively. Thus  $C_F = \langle (0, 0), (1, 0), (1, 1) \rangle$ . Let  $\eta := (1, 1)$  be a direction in  $\mathbb{R}^2$ . Then for any  $(\alpha_1, \alpha_2) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ ,  $L_\eta(\alpha_1, \alpha_2) = \alpha_1 + \alpha_2$ . We see that  $\max_{(\alpha_1, \alpha_2) \in C_F} L_\eta(\alpha_1, \alpha_2) = \max_{(\alpha_1, \alpha_2) \in C_F} \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 = 2$ . Hence  $(E_F)_\eta = \{(\alpha_1, \alpha_2) \mid \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 = 2\}$  and  $(C_F)_\eta = \{(1, 1)\} = \{A_3\}$ . So  $P_3 \in (C_F)_\eta$ .



**Theorem 2.7.2.** Let  $F$  be an algebraic polynomial. For any mapping  $\Lambda$  as defined in Section 2.5, there exists a direction  $\eta$  such that  $\bar{F}$  consists of all terms of  $F$  lying on  $(C_F)_\eta$ .

For a given direction  $\eta$ , if  $F^*$  is the sum of all terms of  $F$  lying on  $(C_F)_\eta$ , then there exists a monobaric mapping  $\Lambda$  for which  $\bar{F} = F^*$ . More generally:

**Theorem 2.7.3.** Consider a finite number of algebraic polynomials  $F_1, \dots, F_N$  and the corresponding baric polyhedrons  $C_{F_\nu} =: C_\nu$  ( $\nu \in \{1, \dots, N\}$ ). Then any mapping  $\Lambda$  corresponds to a direction  $\eta$  such that for  $\nu \in \{1, \dots, N\}$ ,  $\bar{F}_\nu$  consists of all terms of  $F_\nu$  lying on  $(C_\nu)_\eta$ .

Conversely, if we take an arbitrary direction  $\eta$  and for  $\nu \in \{1, \dots, N\}$ , denote the sum of all terms of  $F_\nu$  lying on  $(C_\nu)_\eta$  by  $F_\nu^*$ , then there exists a monobaric mapping  $\Lambda$  for which  $\bar{F}_\nu = F_\nu^*$  ( $\nu \in \{1, \dots, N\}$ ).

*Proof of Theorem 2.7.3.* Assume a general mapping  $\Lambda$  as defined in Section 2.5. By Theorem 2.5.3, the mapping  $F_\nu \mapsto \bar{F}_\nu$  ( $\nu \in \{1, \dots, N\}$ ) can be also achieved by a monobaric mapping and then we can assume  $\Lambda$  to be monobaric. Let  $W(P) :=$



$w_1\alpha_1 + \dots + w_m\alpha_m$  be the corresponding weight function. Choose the direction  $\eta := (w_1, \dots, w_m)$ . Then  $W(P) \equiv L_\eta(A)$ . For each  $\nu \in \{1, \dots, N\}$ , put  $g_\nu := \max_{P \in F_\nu} W(P)$ .

It follows that

$$W(P) = g_\nu \quad (P \in \bar{F}_\nu), \quad W(P) < g_\nu \quad (P \in F_\nu - \bar{F}_\nu) \quad (\nu \in \{1, \dots, N\}). \quad (2.24)$$

We see that  $g_\nu = \max_{A \in C_\nu} L_\eta(A)$  ( $\nu \in \{1, \dots, N\}$ ). Thus for  $\nu \in \{1, \dots, N\}$ , each plane  $L_\eta(A) - g_\nu = 0$  represents a supporting plane in the direction  $\eta$  to  $C_\nu$ . For  $\nu \in \{1, \dots, N\}$ , let  $P \in F_\nu$  and  $A \in C_\nu$  be the representative point of  $P$ . Since  $P \in \bar{F}_\nu \Leftrightarrow W(P) = g_\nu \Leftrightarrow L_\eta(A) = g_\nu \Leftrightarrow A \in (C_\nu)_\eta \Leftrightarrow P \in (C_\nu)_\eta$ , it follows that  $\bar{F}_\nu$  consists of all terms of  $F_\nu$  lying on  $(C_\nu)_\eta$ .

Conversely, assume  $\eta := (w_1, \dots, w_m)$  is an arbitrary direction. For each  $\nu \in \{1, \dots, N\}$ , put  $g_\nu := \max_{A \in C_\nu} L_\eta(A)$ . Then the supporting plane of  $C_\nu$  in the direction  $\eta$  is  $L_\eta(A) - g_\nu = 0$ . Define  $W(P) := L_\eta(A)$ . We have

$$W(P) = g_\nu \quad (P \in F_\nu^*), \quad W(P) < g_\nu \quad (P \in F_\nu - F_\nu^*) \quad (\nu \in \{1, \dots, N\}).$$

Comparing this with (2.24), we see that  $\bar{F}_\nu = F_\nu^*$  for the monobaric mapping  $\Lambda$  defined by the weight function  $W(P)$ .  $\square$

**Theorem 2.7.4.** If  $F$  and  $G$  are two algebraic polynomials in  $x_1, \dots, x_m$ , we have

$$C_{FG} = C_F + C_G.$$

*Proof.* Let  $\eta$  be an arbitrary direction. Define the weight function  $W_\eta(P) := L_\eta(A)$ , where  $A$  is the representative point of a  $PP$ ,  $P$ . Put  $f_\eta := \max_{A \in C_F} L_\eta(A)$  and  $g_\eta := \max_{A \in C_G} L_\eta(A)$ . Then the supporting planes of  $C_F$  and  $C_G$  in the direction  $\eta$  are  $L_\eta(A) -$

$f_\eta = 0$  and  $L_\eta(A) - g_\eta = 0$ , respectively. It follows that the supporting plane of  $C_F + C_G$  is  $L_\eta(A) - (f_\eta + g_\eta) = 0$ . Assume  $\Lambda$  is the monobaric mapping defined by  $W_\eta(P)$ . By the proof of Theorem 2.7.3, for any  $PP$ 's,  $P \in F$  and  $Q \in G$ , we have

$$W_\eta(P) - f_\eta \begin{cases} = 0 & (P \in \bar{F}) \\ < 0 & (P \in F - \bar{F}), \end{cases}$$

$$W_\eta(Q) - g_\eta \begin{cases} = 0 & (Q \in \bar{G}) \\ < 0 & (Q \in G - \bar{G}). \end{cases}$$

Note that  $W_\eta(PQ) - (f_\eta + g_\eta) = (W_\eta(P) + W_\eta(Q)) - (f_\eta + g_\eta) = (W_\eta(P) - f_\eta) + (W_\eta(Q) - g_\eta)$ . Then

$$W_\eta(PQ) - (f_\eta + g_\eta) \begin{cases} = 0 & (P \in \bar{F}, Q \in \bar{G}) \\ < 0 & (P \in F - \bar{F}) \text{ or } (Q \in G - \bar{G}). \end{cases} \quad (2.25)$$

Now, let  $S$  be an arbitrary  $PP$  from  $FG$ . Then if  $S \in \overline{FG}$ , since  $\overline{FG} = \bar{F}\bar{G}$ ,  $S$  can be written as  $PQ$  where  $P \in \bar{F}$  and  $Q \in \bar{G}$ . From (2.25), it follows that

$$W_\eta(S) - (f_\eta + g_\eta) = 0 \quad (S \in \overline{FG}).$$

On the other hand, if  $S \in FG - \overline{FG}$ , then  $S$  can be written as  $PQ$ ,  $P \in F$ ,  $Q \in G$ , where either  $P \in F - \bar{F}$  or  $Q \in G - \bar{G}$ . From (2.25), it follows that

$$W_\eta(S) - (f_\eta + g_\eta) < 0 \quad (S \in FG - \overline{FG}).$$

Since the same relations must hold for the supporting plane of  $C_{FG}$  in the direction

$\eta$ , we see that  $C_{FG}$  and  $C_F + C_G$  have the same supporting plane  $L_\eta(A) - (f_\eta + g_\eta) = 0$  in every direction. Therefore  $C_{FG} = C_F + C_G$ .  $\square$

Among all extreme aggregates of terms contained in a polynomial  $F$ , we consider in particular those aggregates which consist of one term only. Then they correspond to the summits of  $\dot{C}_F$  and will be called ***S* terms of  $F$** .

Let  $F$  be a polynomial and  $P^*$  an *S* term of  $F$ . Assume that  $F = GH$  where  $G$  and  $H$  are polynomials. Consider all weight functions  $W(P)$  such that  $P^*$  is the highest term of  $F$  with respect to  $W(P)$ .

We will show that there is exactly one *S* term of  $G$  and one *S* term of  $H$  which are the highest terms of  $G$  and  $H$ , respectively, with respect to these weight functions  $W(P)$ .

To see this, take one of the weight functions  $W(P)$  and the corresponding mapping  $\Lambda$ . Then we have  $P^* = \bar{F} = \overline{GH} = \bar{G}\bar{H}$ . Thus both  $G$  and  $H$  are monomials and there exists only one pair of terms of  $G$  and  $H$  such that their product is exactly  $P^*$ . Let  $W_1(P)$  and  $W_2(P)$  be weight functions such that  $P^*$  is the highest term of  $F$  with respect to both  $W_1(P)$  and  $W_2(P)$ . Then there exist monomials  $\bar{G}_1, \bar{G}_2, \bar{H}_1, \bar{H}_2$  such that  $P^* = \bar{G}_1\bar{H}_1 = \bar{G}_2\bar{H}_2$  where  $\bar{G}_1, \bar{G}_2$  are the highest terms of  $G$  with respect to  $W_1(P)$  and  $W_2(P)$ , respectively and  $\bar{H}_1, \bar{H}_2$  are the highest terms of  $H$  with respect to  $W_1(P)$  and  $W_2(P)$ , respectively. Since  $W_1(P^*) = W_1(\bar{G}_2\bar{H}_2) = W_1(\bar{G}_2) + W_1(\bar{H}_2) \leq W_1(\bar{G}_1) + W_1(\bar{H}_1) = W_1(\bar{G}_1\bar{H}_1) = W_1(P^*)$ ,  $W_1(\bar{G}_2) + W_1(\bar{H}_2) = W_1(\bar{G}_1) + W_1(\bar{H}_1)$ . Since  $W_1(\bar{G}_2) \leq W_1(\bar{G}_1)$  and  $W_1(\bar{H}_2) \leq W_1(\bar{H}_1)$ ,  $W_1(\bar{G}_2) = W_1(\bar{G}_1)$  and  $W_1(\bar{H}_2) = W_1(\bar{H}_1)$ . Thus  $\bar{G}_1 = \bar{G}_2$  and  $\bar{H}_1 = \bar{H}_2$  because  $\bar{G}_1, \bar{G}_2, \bar{H}_1, \bar{H}_2$  are monomials. Therefore  $\bar{G}$  must be the same for all of our  $W(P)$  and the same holds for  $\bar{H}$ .

The corresponding result holds also for a product of more than two polynomials.

## CHAPTER III

### IRREDUCIBILITY

#### 3.1 General observations on reducibility of polynomials

In this chapter, we assume that  $K$  is a field of characteristic 0.

Let  $F$  be an algebraic polynomial given in the form  $F = \sum_{\nu} c_{\nu} P_{\nu}$  where  $c_{\nu} \in K \setminus \{0\}$  and  $P_{\nu}$  are distinct algebraic  $PP$ 's. We will say that  $F$  is **reducible** if we can write  $F = GH$  where  $G$  and  $H$  are proper polynomials. Then  $G$  and  $H$  are called **proper factors** of  $F$ . And  $F$  is called **irreducible** if  $F$  is not reducible. Although primarily one is interested in this connection in integer polynomials, it is more convenient to operate with rational polynomials. Indeed, dealing with rational polynomials we can use the m-r-transformations as defined in Section 2.1 of Chapter II, with  $a_{\mu\nu} \in \mathbb{Z}$  such that  $\det[a_{\mu\nu}] = \pm 1$  and this often considerably simplify the discussion.

On the other hand, it can be seen that a reducibility problem for rational polynomials is essentially equivalent to a reducibility problem for integer polynomials. To see this, we will give the definition of a **primitive** polynomial.

An integer polynomial which is not divisible by any of the variables  $x_1, \dots, x_m$  will be called a **primitive** polynomial.

#### **Proposition 3.1.1.**

- A. The product of two primitive polynomials is again primitive.
- B. The product of a primitive polynomial with a  $PP$ , which is  $\neq 1$ , is not primitive.

C. Any rational polynomial  $F$  can be written as  $F = PF^*$  where  $P$  is a  $PP$  and  $F^*$  is a primitive polynomial.  $F^*$  is uniquely determined by  $F$ . We will call  $F^*$  the **primitive kernel** of  $F$ .

D. If  $F = GH$  where  $F, G, H$  are proper polynomials, then  $F^* = G^*H^*$  where the primitive polynomials  $G^*$  and  $H^*$  are also proper.

*Proof.* A and B are obvious. To show C, let  $F$  be any rational polynomial.

**Case 1.**  $F$  is an integer polynomial. If  $F$  is primitive, choose  $P = 1$  and  $F^* = F$ . Otherwise, let  $P$  be a  $PP$  such that  $F/P$  is primitive. Then we choose  $F^* = F/P$ .

**Case 2.**  $F$  is not an integer polynomial, i.e.  $F$  contains a rational  $PP$  which is not integer. Let  $P_1$  be a rational  $PP$  such that  $F/P_1$  is an integer polynomial. By Case 1,  $F/P_1 = P_2F^*$  where  $P_2$  is a  $PP$  and  $F^*$  is a primitive polynomial. Then we choose  $P = P_1P_2$ .

To show that  $F^*$  is uniquely determined by  $F$ , let  $P_1, P_2$  be  $PP$ 's and  $F_1^*, F_2^*$  primitive polynomials such that  $F = P_1F_1^* = P_2F_2^*$ . If  $P_1 \neq P_2$ , then  $P_1/P_2 \neq 1$ . By B, we have that  $F_2^* = (P_1/P_2)F_1^*$  is not primitive, which is a contradiction. Thus  $P_1 = P_2$ , so  $F_1^* = F_2^*$ .

Finally, to show D, assume that  $F = P_1F^*, G = P_2G^*, H = P_3H^*$  where  $P_1, P_2, P_3$  are  $PP$ 's and  $F^*, G^*, H^*$  are primitive kernels of  $F, G, H$ , respectively. By the uniqueness of  $F^*$ , we have that  $F^* = G^*H^*$ . Since  $G$  is proper and  $G = P_2G^*$ ,  $G^*$  is not a constant. Since  $G^*$  is primitive,  $G^*$  is not a nonconstant monomial. Then  $G^*$  is not a monomial, i.e.  $G^*$  is proper. Similarly,  $H^*$  is proper.  $\square$

By Proposition 3.1.1 D, we see that the kernel of a reducible rational polynomial is reducible in the domain of integer polynomials.

In some cases it can be proved that a given rational polynomial  $F$  is irreducible not only in the domain of rational polynomials but even in the domain of all algebraic

polynomials, i.e.  $F$  cannot be represented as a product  $F = GH$  where  $G$  and  $H$  are proper algebraic polynomials. On this level of investigation, it is reasonable to consider also the irreducibility or reducibility of algebraic polynomials.

Assume that we have the decomposition of the algebraic polynomial  $F$ ,  $F = GH$  where  $G$  and  $H$  are proper algebraic polynomials. Let  $D$  be the smallest common denominator of all exponents in  $F, G, H$ . Then we obtain the decomposition of  $F(x_1^D, \dots, x_m^D)$  in two proper rational factors. However it is more convenient to operate with algebraic polynomials as such.

In dealing with such problems we can use again the m-r-transformations as defined in Section 2.1 of Chapter II, with  $a_{\mu\nu} \in \mathbb{Q}$  such that  $\det[a_{\mu\nu}] \neq 0$ .

We will say that  $PP$ 's  $P_1, \dots, P_k$  are **algebraically independent** over a field  $K$  if there is no nonzero rational polynomial  $F(y_1, \dots, y_k)$  with coefficients from  $K$  such that  $F(P_1, \dots, P_k) = 0$ . And we will say that  $PP$ 's  $P_1, \dots, P_k$  are **algebraically dependent** over  $K$  if they are not algebraically independent over  $K$ .

**Proposition 3.1.2.** If  $PP$ 's  $P_1, \dots, P_k$  are algebraically dependent, then there exist  $s_\kappa \in \mathbb{Z}$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ ), not all zero, such that  $P_1^{s_1} P_2^{s_2} \dots P_k^{s_k} = 1$ .

*Proof.* Since  $P_1, \dots, P_k$  are algebraically dependent, there exist  $\sigma_\kappa^{(\nu)} \in \mathbb{Z}$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ ) and  $c_\nu \in K \setminus \{0\}$  such that

$$\sum_{\nu} c_{\nu} P_1^{\sigma_1^{(\nu)}} P_2^{\sigma_2^{(\nu)}} \dots P_k^{\sigma_k^{(\nu)}} = 0.$$

If this relation is satisfied after introducing the expressions of each  $P_1, \dots, P_k$  in the variables  $x_1, \dots, x_m$ , then there must exist at least two different expressions

$$P_1^{\sigma'_1} \dots P_k^{\sigma'_k}, P_1^{\sigma''_1} \dots P_k^{\sigma''_k}$$

which become identical when expressed in  $x_1, \dots, x_m$ , so we can cancel one another.

Thus we have the relation

$$P_1^{\sigma'_1 - \sigma''_1} \dots P_k^{\sigma'_k - \sigma''_k} = 1$$

where  $\sigma'_\kappa - \sigma''_\kappa \in \mathbb{Z}$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ ) and not all of them are zero.  $\square$

A polynomial  $F$  will be called **homogeneous** if all  $PP$ 's in  $F$  have the same dimension.

**Proposition 3.1.3.** Let  $k, D \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $c_\nu \in K \setminus \{0\}$  ( $\nu \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ ).

If  $c_1x_1^D + c_2x_2^D + \dots + c_kx_k^D = FG$ , where  $F$  and  $G$  are proper integer polynomials, then  $F$  and  $G$  must be homogeneous polynomials of the dimensions which are smaller than  $D$  and the derivatives  $F_{x_\kappa}, G_{x_\kappa} \neq 0$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ ).

*Proof.* Observe that  $F$  can be decomposed into  $F_1 + F_2 + \dots + F_r$  where  $r \geq 1$ , each  $F_i$  ( $i \in \{1, \dots, r\}$ ) is a nonzero homogeneous polynomial of the dimension  $a_i$  and  $0 \leq a_1 < a_2 < \dots < a_r$ . Also,  $G$  can be decomposed into  $G_1 + G_2 + \dots + G_s$  where  $s \geq 1$ , each  $G_j$  ( $j \in \{1, \dots, s\}$ ) is a nonzero homogeneous polynomial of the dimension  $b_j$  and  $0 \leq b_1 < b_2 < \dots < b_s$ . Note that  $F_1G_1, F_rG_s \neq 0$  and  $F_1G_1, F_rG_s$  are of the dimensions  $a_1b_1, a_rb_s$ , respectively. From  $c_1x_1^D + c_2x_2^D + \dots + c_kx_k^D = FG$ , then  $a_1b_1 = a_rb_s$ . Thus  $r = s = 1$ , so  $F$  and  $G$  are homogeneous polynomials. Denote the dimensions of  $F$  and  $G$  by  $a$  and  $b$ , respectively. Since  $F$  and  $G$  are proper,  $a, b > 0$ . From  $c_1x_1^D + c_2x_2^D + \dots + c_kx_k^D = FG$ , then  $a + b = D$ . Thus  $a, b < D$ . Suppose that there exists  $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}$  such that the derivative  $F_{x_\kappa} = 0$ . It follows that  $G$  must contain an integer  $PP$   $P$  which can be written as  $P = x_\kappa^D Q$  where  $Q$  is an integer  $PP$ . So  $a \geq D$ , which is a contradiction. Hence the derivative  $F_{x_\kappa} \neq 0$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ ). Similarly, the derivative  $G_{x_\kappa} \neq 0$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ ).  $\square$

**Lemma 3.1.4.** The polynomial

$$x_1^D + x_2^D + \cdots + x_k^D \quad (k \geq 3, D \geq 1) \quad (3.1)$$

is irreducible in the domain of integer polynomials.

*Proof.* First, we will assume  $D \geq 3$ . Suppose that

$$x_1^D + x_2^D + \cdots + x_k^D = FG, \quad (3.2)$$

where  $F$  and  $G$  are proper integer polynomials. By Proposition 3.1.3,  $F$  and  $G$  must be homogeneous polynomials. Denote the dimensions of  $F$  and  $G$  by  $a$  and  $b$ , respectively. From the proof of Proposition 3.1.3, we have  $a, b < D$ . Differentiating both sides of (3.2) with respect to  $x_k$ , we obtain  $Dx_k^{D-1} = F_{x_k}G + G_{x_k}F$ . Write  $F_{x_k} = x_k^\alpha f$ ,  $G_{x_k} = x_k^\beta g$ , where  $f$  and  $g$  are polynomials which are not divisible by  $x_k$ . By Proposition 3.1.3, we have that the derivatives  $F_{x_k}, G_{x_k} \neq 0$ . Then  $0 \leq \alpha \leq a-1 \leq D-2$  and  $0 \leq \beta \leq b-1 \leq D-2$ . Without loss of generality, we can assume  $\alpha \leq \beta$  since we can interchange  $F$  and  $G$ . Note that  $Dx_k^{D-1} = x_k^\alpha fG + x_k^\beta gF = x_k^\alpha (fG + x_k^{\beta-\alpha} gF)$ . Multiplying both sides by  $x_k^{-\alpha}$ ,

$$Dx_k^{D-1-\alpha} = fG + x_k^{\beta-\alpha} gF. \quad (3.3)$$

Since  $\alpha \leq D-2$ ,  $D-1-\alpha \geq 1$ . Thus  $Dx_k^{D-1-\alpha}$  is divisible by  $x_k$ . If  $G$  is divisible by  $x_k$ , then  $x_1^D + x_2^D + \cdots + x_k^D = FG$  is also divisible by  $x_k$ , which is impossible. Thus  $G$  is not divisible by  $x_k$ , so  $fG$  is also not divisible by  $x_k$ . It follows that  $\beta = \alpha$ . Taking  $x_k = 0$  in (3.3) and denoting the corresponding values of  $f, g, F, G$  by  $f_0, g_0, F_0, G_0$ , respectively, it follows that



$$f_0 G_0 = -g_0 F_0. \quad (3.4)$$

Note that both  $F_0$  and  $G_0$  have no nonconstant factors which are monomials.

Otherwise  $x_1^D + x_2^D + \cdots + x_{k-1}^D = F_0 G_0$  would be divisible by the nonconstant monomial, which is impossible. If  $F_0$  and  $G_0$  have a common proper factor, say  $H$ , then  $x_1^D + x_2^D + \cdots + x_{k-1}^D = F_0 G_0$  is divisible by  $H^2$ . So  $x_1^D + x_2^D + \cdots + x_{k-1}^D = F_0 G_0 = H^2 I$  where  $I$  is an integer polynomial. Differentiating both sides with respect to  $x_1, \dots, x_k$ , we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} Dx_1^{D-1} &= 2HH_{x_1}I + H^2I_{x_1}, \\ Dx_2^{D-1} &= 2HH_{x_2}I + H^2I_{x_2}, \\ &\vdots \\ Dx_{k-1}^{D-1} &= 2HH_{x_{k-1}}I + H^2I_{x_{k-1}}. \end{aligned}$$

It follows that  $Dx_1^{D-1}, Dx_2^{D-1}, \dots, Dx_{k-1}^{D-1}$  have a proper factor  $H$  in common, which is impossible since  $k \geq 3$ . Thus  $F_0$  and  $G_0$  have no proper factors in common. By (3.4), we have that  $f_0 G_0$  is divisible by  $F_0$  and  $g_0 F_0$  is divisible by  $G_0$ . Let  $J$  be a nonconstant irreducible factor of  $F_0$ . Then  $J$  is not a monomial, i.e.  $J$  is proper. Thus  $J$  is not a factor of  $G_0$ . Since  $f_0 G_0$  is divisible by  $F_0$ ,  $f_0 G_0$  is also divisible by  $J$ . So  $f_0$  must be divisible by  $J$ . Hence  $f_0$  is divisible by  $F_0$ . And we can prove in the similar way that  $g_0$  is divisible by  $G_0$ . But the dimensions of  $f_0$  and  $g_0$  are smaller than the dimensions of  $F_0$  and  $G_0$ , respectively. This is a contradiction, and Lemma 3.1.3 is proved in the case  $D \geq 3$ .

For the case  $D = 1$ , it is obvious that  $x_1 + x_2 + \cdots + x_k$  is always irreducible in the domain of integer polynomials.

Finally, assume  $D = 2$ . Suppose that  $x_1^2 + x_2^2 + \cdots + x_k^2 = FG$ , where  $F$  and  $G$  are proper integer polynomials. By Proposition 3.1.3,  $F$  and  $G$  must be homogeneous polynomials of the dimensions 1 and the derivatives  $F_{x_\kappa}, G_{x_\kappa} \neq 0$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ ). Then  $F = a_1x_1 + \cdots + a_kx_k$ ,  $G = b_1x_1 + \cdots + b_kx_k$  where  $a_\kappa, b_\kappa \in K \setminus \{0\}$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ ). Note that  $a_1b_2, a_2b_1 \neq 0$ . So  $FG$  contains the term  $(a_1b_2 + a_2b_1)x_1x_2$  but  $x_1^2 + x_2^2 + \cdots + x_k^2$  does not contain such term. This is a contradiction.  $\square$

**Corollary 3.1.5.** The polynomial

$$x_1^D + x_2^D + \cdots + x_k^D + 1 \quad (k \geq 2, D \geq 1) \quad (3.5)$$

is irreducible in the domain of integer polynomials.

*Proof.* We claim that  $x_1, \dots, x_{k-1}, x_k/x_{k+1}$  are algebraically independent. Suppose not, then, by Proposition 3.1.2, there exist  $s_\kappa \in \mathbb{Z}$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ ), not all zero, such that  $x_1^{s_1} \cdots x_{k-1}^{s_{k-1}} (x_k/x_{k+1})^{s_k} = 1$ . So we have  $x_1^{s_1} \cdots x_{k-1}^{s_{k-1}} x_k^{s_k} x_{k+1}^{-s_k} = 1$ . This contradicts the fact that  $x_1, \dots, x_{k+1}$  are algebraically independent. Replacing  $x_k$  in (3.5) with  $x_k/x_{k+1}$ , we have

$$x_1^D + \cdots + x_{k-1}^D + (x_k/x_{k+1})^D + 1. \quad (3.6)$$

It can be seen that if (3.6) is irreducible in the domain of integer polynomials, then so is (3.5). Next, claim that  $x_1x_{k+1}, \dots, x_{k-1}x_{k+1}, x_k, x_{k+1}$  are algebraically independent. Suppose not, then, by Proposition 3.1.2, there exist  $s_\kappa \in \mathbb{Z}$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k+1\}$ ), not all zero, such that  $(x_1x_{k+1})^{s_1} \cdots (x_{k-1}x_{k+1})^{s_{k-1}} x_k^{s_k} x_{k+1}^{s_{k+1}} = 1$ . So we have  $x_1^{s_1} \cdots x_k^{s_k} x_{k+1}^{s_1 + \cdots + s_{k-1} + s_{k+1}} = 1$ . This contradicts the fact that  $x_1, \dots, x_{k+1}$  are algebraically independent. Then multiplying (3.6) by  $x_{k+1}^D$ , we have

$$(x_1 x_{k+1})^D + (x_2 x_{k+1})^D + \cdots + x_k^D + x_{k+1}^D. \quad (3.7)$$

By Lemma 3.1.4, it follows that (3.7) is irreducible in the domain of integer polynomials. Then so is (3.6), and Corollary 3.1.5 is proved.  $\square$

**Corollary 3.1.6.** The polynomials (3.1) and (3.5) are irreducible even in the domain of algebraic polynomials.

*Proof.* Suppose that

$$x_1^D + x_2^D + \cdots + x_k^D = FG, \quad (3.8)$$

where  $F$  and  $G$  are proper algebraic polynomials. Let  $M$  be the smallest common denominator of all exponents in  $F$  and  $G$ . Replacing each  $x_\kappa$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ ) in (3.8) with  $x_\kappa^M$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ ), we have

$$x_1^{DM} + x_2^{DM} + \cdots + x_k^{DM} = F(x_1^M, \dots, x_k^M)G(x_1^M, \dots, x_k^M).$$

Note that  $F(x_1^M, \dots, x_k^M), G(x_1^M, \dots, x_k^M)$  are proper rational polynomials. Write

$$F(x_1^M, \dots, x_k^M)G(x_1^M, \dots, x_k^M) = PF_1G_1,$$

where  $P$  is a rational  $PP$  and  $F_1, G_1$  are integer polynomials such that  $F_1G_1$  is not divisible by  $Q$  for any integer  $PP$   $Q \neq 1$ . Denote  $P := x_1^{\alpha_1} \cdots x_k^{\alpha_k}$  where  $\alpha_\kappa \in \mathbb{Z}$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ ). Let  $P_1 := x_1^{\max\{0, \alpha_1\}} \cdots x_k^{\max\{0, \alpha_k\}}$  and  $P_2 := x_1^{\min\{0, \alpha_1\}} \cdots x_k^{\min\{0, \alpha_k\}}$ . Obviously,  $P = P_1P_2$ . Then we have

$$P_2^{-1}(x_1^{DM} + x_2^{DM} + \cdots + x_k^{DM}) = P_1F_1G_1.$$

Note that both  $P_1, P_2^{-1}$  are integer  $PP$ 's. If  $P_1 \neq 1$ , then  $P_2^{-1}$  is not divisible by  $P_1$ ,

so  $x_1^{DM} + x_2^{DM} + \dots + x_k^{DM}$  must be divisible by  $P_1$ , which is a contradiction. Thus  $P_1 = 1$ . And if  $P_2^{-1} \neq 1$ , then  $P_1$  is not divisible by  $P_2^{-1}$ , so  $F_1 G_1$  must be divisible by  $P_2^{-1}$ , which is a contradiction. Thus  $P_2^{-1} = 1$ , so  $P_2 = 1$ . Hence  $P = 1$ . It follows that

$$x_1^{DM} + x_2^{DM} + \dots + x_k^{DM} = F_1 G_1.$$

This contradicts Lemma 3.1.4. Therefore (3.1) is irreducible in the domain of algebraic polynomials. That (3.5) is irreducible in the domain of algebraic polynomials is proved in the similar way.  $\square$

**Corollary 3.1.7.** Let  $n \geq 3$  and  $P_1, \dots, P_n$  be algebraic PP's in  $x_1, \dots, x_m$  which are algebraically independent. Then the polynomial

$$\sum_{\nu=1}^n c_\nu P_\nu \quad (c_1 c_2 \dots c_n \neq 0) \quad (3.9)$$

is irreducible even in the domain of algebraic polynomials.

*Proof.* First, we show that  $n \leq m$ . Suppose  $n > m$ . If we take  $P_1^{s_1} P_2^{s_2} \dots P_n^{s_n} = 1$  and introduce the expressions of  $P_1, P_2, \dots, P_n$  in the variables  $x_1, \dots, x_m$ , then this leads to  $m$  equations with  $n$  unknowns  $(s_1, \dots, s_n)$ . Thus there is a nontrivial solution  $s_\kappa \in \mathbb{Z}$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, n\}$ ), not all zero, such that  $P_1^{s_1} P_2^{s_2} \dots P_n^{s_n} = 1$ . This contradicts the assumption that  $P_1, \dots, P_n$  are algebraically independent, and so  $n \leq m$ . By an m-r-transformation, we can introduce  $m$  new variables  $y_\nu$  such that  $y_\nu := P_\nu$  ( $\nu \in \{1, \dots, n\}$ ). Then (3.9) becomes

$$\sum_{\nu=1}^n c_\nu y_\nu. \quad (3.10)$$

Introducing  $z_\nu := c_\nu y_\nu$  ( $\nu \in \{1, \dots, n\}$ ), (3.10) becomes

$$z_1 + z_2 + \dots + z_n. \quad (3.11)$$

By Corollary 3.1.6, it follows that (3.11) is irreducible in the domain of algebraic polynomials. Then so are (3.10) and (3.9).  $\square$

Corollary 3.1.7 can be generalized to

**Theorem 3.1.8.** If  $n + 1$  algebraic  $PP$ 's are such that  $P_1/P_0, \dots, P_n/P_0$  are algebraically independent, then the algebraic polynomial

$$\sum_{\nu=0}^n c_\nu P_\nu \quad (c_0 c_1 \dots c_n \neq 0, n \geq 2) \quad (3.12)$$

is irreducible in the domain of all algebraic polynomials.

*Proof.* Let  $Q_\nu := \frac{c_\nu}{c_0} P_\nu / P_0$  ( $\nu \in \{1, \dots, n\}$ ). Then dividing the polynomial (3.12) by  $c_0 P_0$ , we have

$$1 + Q_1 + \dots + Q_n. \quad (3.13)$$

Since  $Q_1, \dots, Q_n$  are algebraically independent, we can again introduce  $n$  new variables  $z_\nu := Q_\nu$  ( $\nu \in \{1, \dots, n\}$ ). Then (3.13) becomes

$$1 + z_1 + \dots + z_n. \quad (3.14)$$

By Corollary 3.1.6, it follows that (3.14) is irreducible in the domain of algebraic polynomials. Then so are (3.13) and (3.12).  $\square$

### 3.2 A criterion for absolute irreducibility

Assume that a polynomial  $F$  with coefficients from a field  $K$  is a proper irreducible polynomial with respect to  $K$ . Then it can happen that there exists an algebraic extension of  $K$ ,  $K^*$ , such that  $F$  has a proper factor  $\varphi(x_1, \dots, x_m)$  with coefficients from  $K^*$ . In this case, we say that  $F$  becomes **reducible in  $K^*$** . But if there does

not exist any algebraic extension of  $K$  in which  $F$  becomes reducible,  $F$  is called **absolutely irreducible**.

**Example 3.2.1.** 1)  $x_1^2 + x_2^2 + x_3^2$  is an absolutely irreducible polynomial (by Corollary 3.1.6).

2)  $x_1^2 - 2x_2^2$  is irreducible with respect to  $\mathbb{Q}$  but becomes reducible in  $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{2})$ .

We show that  $x_1^2 - 2x_2^2$  is irreducible with respect to  $\mathbb{Q}$ . suppose that  $x_1^2 - 2x_2^2 = FG$ , where  $F$  and  $G$  are proper integer polynomials with coefficients from  $\mathbb{Q}$ . By Proposition 3.1.3,  $F$  and  $G$  must be homogeneous polynomials of the dimensions 1 and the derivatives  $F_{x_1}, F_{x_2}, G_{x_1}, G_{x_2} \neq 0$ . Then  $F = a_1x_1 + a_2x_2$ ,  $G = b_1x_1 + b_2x_2$  where  $a_1, a_2, b_1, b_2 \in \mathbb{Q} \setminus \{0\}$ . Thus  $x_1^2 - 2x_2^2 = FG = a_1b_1x_1^2 + (a_1b_2 + a_2b_1)x_1x_2 + a_2b_2x_2^2$ . Comparing the coefficients on both sides, we obtain  $a_1b_1 = 1$ ,  $a_1b_2 + a_2b_1 = 0$ ,  $a_2b_2 = -2$ . So  $b_1 = \frac{1}{a_1}$ ,  $b_2 = -\frac{2}{a_2}$ , and  $-\frac{2a_1}{a_2} + \frac{a_2}{a_1} = 0$ . Multiplying by  $a_1a_2$ , we have  $-2a_1^2 + a_2^2 = 0$ . It follows that  $\left(\frac{a_2}{a_1}\right)^2 = 2$ , which is impossible.

Note that  $x_1^2 - 2x_2^2 = (x_1 - \sqrt{2}x_2)(x_1 + \sqrt{2}x_2)$ . Hence  $x_1^2 - 2x_2^2$  is reducible in  $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{2})$ .

We will develop a criterion which allows us in many cases to prove the absolute irreducibility.

Assume that we have the decomposition of the integer polynomial  $F$ ,  $F = GH$  where  $G$  and  $H$  are proper integer polynomials. The factor polynomials  $G$  and  $H$  can be multiplied with an arbitrary coefficient  $t \neq 0$  and  $\frac{1}{t}$ , respectively. Then in this way the coefficients of  $G$  and  $H$  shifted into a field  $K^*$  which is possibly too large. We see that if the coefficients of  $G$  are denoted by  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots$  and the coefficients of  $H$  are denoted by  $\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots$ , then all products  $\alpha_\nu \beta_\mu$  lie in the 'smallest' field over  $K$ ,  $K(\alpha_\nu \beta_\mu)$ , in which the decomposition  $F = GH$  can be obtained by using suitable common factors. To see this, assume  $G = \alpha_1P_1 + \dots + \alpha_rP_r$  and  $H =$

$\beta_1 Q_1 + \cdots + \beta_s Q_s$ , where  $r, s \geq 1$  and for  $\nu \in \{1, \dots, r\}$ ,  $\mu \in \{1, \dots, s\}$ ,  $P_\nu, Q_\mu$  are  $PP$ 's and  $\alpha_\nu, \beta_\mu \in K \setminus \{0\}$ . Let  $G' := \beta_1 G = \alpha_1 \beta_1 P_1 + \cdots + \alpha_r \beta_1 P_r$  and  $H' := \frac{1}{\beta_1} H = Q_1 + \frac{\beta_2}{\beta_1} Q_2 + \cdots + \frac{\beta_s}{\beta_1} Q_s$ . Then  $F = GH = G'H'$  and we see that all coefficients of  $G'$  and  $H'$  lie in  $K(\alpha_\nu \beta_\mu)$ . In particular, all coefficients of  $G$  and  $H$  lie in  $K(\alpha_\nu \beta_\mu)$  if one of them is  $= 1$ . Therefore we can **norm** the polynomial  $F$  by taking the coefficient one of its  $S$  terms  $= 1$ . Then the correspondings  $S$  term in  $G$  and  $H$  have the coefficients 1. In this case we will say that  $F, G, H$  are **normed**. Observe that if a polynomial,  $f(x)$ , in one variable  $x$ , is normed, then all of its coefficients are rational functions of its roots.

Note that if there exists the field  $K^*$  over  $K$  in which  $F$  becomes reducible,  $K^*$  need not to be finite or algebraic over  $K$ . However, it can be always replaced with a finite algebraic extension of  $K$ . To prove this, assume the decomposition

$$F(x_1, \dots, x_m) = G(x_1, \dots, x_m)H(x_1, \dots, x_m)$$

where all coefficients of  $G$  and  $H$  lie in  $K^*$  and  $F, G, H$  are normed. Using the Kronecker's substitution,  $x_1 = x, x_2 = x^g, x_3 = x^{g^2}, \dots, x_m = x^{g^{m-1}}$ . Then we obtain

$$F(x, x^g, \dots, x^{g^{m-1}}) = G(x, x^g, \dots, x^{g^{m-1}})H(x, x^g, \dots, x^{g^{m-1}})$$

where if the integer  $g$  is chosen sufficiently large, then no terms in  $G$  and  $H$  are mixed up and the sequence of the coefficients remains the same. So we have on both sides polynomials in one variable  $x$  and the roots of these polynomials are the roots of the left hand polynomial which has coefficients in  $K$ . Thus these roots are algebraic with respect to  $K$ . Since  $G$  and  $H$  are normed, their coefficients are rational functions of their roots which are also algebraic with respect to  $K$ . Hence  $F$  becomes reducible

in the field  $K^*$  obtained from  $K$  by adjunction of all coefficients of  $G$  and  $H$ . We see that the field  $K^*$  is a finite algebraic extension of  $K$ .

**Theorem 3.2.2.** Consider  $m$  variables  $x_1, \dots, x_m$ , algebraically independent with respect to  $K$ , and an integer polynomial  $F(x_1, \dots, x_m)$  with coefficients from  $K$  and irreducible with respect to  $K$ . Assume that  $F$  has a proper integer factor  $\psi(x_1, \dots, x_m)$  which is absolutely irreducible and assumed to be normed. Let  $K^*$  be the field obtained from  $K$  by adjunction of all coefficients of  $\psi$  and let  $k := [K^* : K]$ .

Then each  $S$  term of  $F$  is  $k$ -th power of the corresponding  $S$  term of  $\psi$ .

In particular, if the greatest common divisor of the exponents of all  $S$  terms of  $F$  is 1, then  $F$  is absolutely irreducible.

*Proof.* Let  $n$  be the degree of  $\psi$  in  $x_1, \dots, x_m$  (i.e. the maximal dimension of all  $PP$ 's occurring in  $\psi$ ). Let  $n'$  be the smallest degree of an absolutely irreducible integer factor of  $F$  and let  $\varphi_1$  be such factor which assumed to be normed, where if  $n' = n$ , we take  $\varphi_1 := \psi$ . Let  $K'$  be the field obtained from  $K$  by adjunction of all coefficients of  $\varphi_1$  and let  $k' := [K' : K]$ . Since the characteristic of  $K$  is 0,  $K'$  can be written as  $K(\rho_1)$  where  $\rho_1$  is a primitive element of  $K'$ , of degree  $k'$  with respect to  $K$ .

Then each coefficients of  $\varphi_1$  can be written as an integer polynomials in  $\rho_1$ , so we can write  $\varphi_1 = \phi(\rho_1, x_1, \dots, x_m)$  where  $\phi$  is an integer polynomial of its  $m + 1$  variables with coefficients from  $K$ . Let  $\rho_2, \dots, \rho_{k'}$  be all conjugates of  $\rho_1$  and let  $\varphi_\kappa := \phi(\rho_\kappa, x_1, \dots, x_m)$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k'\}$ ). It follows that each  $\varphi_\kappa$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k'\}$ ) is also a factor of  $F$  and must be absolutely irreducible, since otherwise  $F$  would have a proper factor of degree  $< n'$ . Moreover, all  $\varphi_\kappa$  are distinct since otherwise the number of conjugates of  $\rho_1$  would be  $\leq k' - 1$  and all coefficients of  $\varphi_1$  would lie in an extension of  $K$  of degree  $< k'$ . Since  $\varphi_1$  is normed,  $\varphi_2, \dots, \varphi_{k'}$  are also normed. We claim that  $\varphi_\kappa/\varphi_\lambda$  cannot be independent of  $x_1, \dots, x_m$  if  $\kappa \neq \lambda$ . Suppose that



$\varphi_\kappa/\varphi_\lambda = a$  where  $\kappa \neq \lambda$  and  $a \in K'$ . Then  $\varphi_\kappa = a\varphi_\lambda$ . Since  $\varphi_\kappa$  and  $\varphi_\lambda$  are normed,  $a = 1$ . Thus  $\varphi_\kappa = \varphi_\lambda$ , which is a contradiction. Hence  $F$  must be divisible by  $\prod_{\kappa=1}^{k'} \varphi_\kappa(x_1, \dots, x_m)$ . Note that  $\prod_{\kappa=1}^{k'} \phi(y_\kappa, x_1, \dots, x_m)$  is a symmetric polynomial over  $K[x_1, \dots, x_m]$  in  $k'$  variables,  $y_1, \dots, y_{k'}$ . Since  $\rho_1, \dots, \rho_{k'}$  are all roots of the minimal polynomial of  $\rho_1$  over  $K$ , it follows that  $\prod_{\kappa=1}^{k'} \phi(\rho_\kappa, x_1, \dots, x_m) \in K[x_1, \dots, x_m]$ , i.e.  $\prod_{\kappa=1}^{k'} \varphi_\kappa(x_1, \dots, x_m) \in K[x_1, \dots, x_m]$ . And  $\prod_{\kappa=1}^{k'} \varphi_\kappa(x_1, \dots, x_m)$  is also normed because  $\varphi_1, \dots, \varphi_{k'}$  are normed. Since  $F$  is irreducible in  $K$ ,  $F = b \prod_{\kappa=1}^{k'} \varphi_\kappa(x_1, \dots, x_m)$  where  $b \in K$ . But  $\psi$  is a factor of  $F$ , then it must be divisible by  $\varphi_\kappa$  for some  $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k'\}$ . Since  $\psi$  is absolutely irreducible,  $\psi = c\varphi_\kappa$  where  $c \in K$ . Thus  $n' = n$ , so  $\psi = \varphi_\kappa$ . Then we obtain  $K' = K^*$  and  $k' = k$ .

Observe that if  $\psi = \varphi_1$  contains a term  $c(\rho_1)x_1^{\alpha_1} \dots x_m^{\alpha_m}$  where  $c(\rho_1)$  is a nonzero polynomial in  $\rho_1$  with coefficients from  $K$ , then each  $\varphi_\kappa$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ ) contains the term  $c(\rho_\kappa)x_1^{\alpha_1} \dots x_m^{\alpha_m}$  where  $c(\rho_\kappa)$  is the conjugate of  $c(\rho_1)$ . Then  $c(\rho_\kappa) \neq 0$ . We see that different  $\varphi_\kappa$  contain exactly the same  $PP$  and therefore have identical baric polyhedrons:  $C_\psi = C_{\varphi_1} = \dots = C_{\varphi_k}$ . It follows that if an  $S$  term  $P^*$  of  $F$  corresponds to the  $S$  term  $c(\rho_1)x_1^{\alpha_1} \dots x_m^{\alpha_m}$  in  $\psi$ , then the corresponding term in  $\varphi_\kappa$  ( $\kappa \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ ) is  $c(\rho_\kappa)x_1^{\alpha_1} \dots x_m^{\alpha_m}$  and therefore  $P^* = x_1^{k\alpha_1} \dots x_m^{k\alpha_m} \prod_{\kappa=1}^k c(\rho_\kappa)$ .

Finally, assume that the greatest common divisor of the exponents of all  $S$  terms of  $F$  is 1. Then  $k = 1$ . Thus  $F = b\varphi_1(x_1, \dots, x_m)$ , so  $F$  is absolutely irreducible. Therefore Theorem 3.2.2 is proved.  $\square$

From Theorem 3.2.2, it follows that the degrees of all highest terms of  $F$  in any of the possible lexicographic orderings are divisible by  $k$ .

### 3.3 An analogue of Eisenstein-Schönemann theorem

Let  $J$  be the set of all integer polynomials in  $x_1, \dots, x_m$  with coefficients from a field  $K$ . We will consider a weight function  $W(F)$  such that  $W(x_\nu) > 0$  ( $\nu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ) and the corresponding monoharic mapping. We will show that the additivity property of  $W(F)$  remains conserved for not necessarily isobaric polynomials.

Let  $F$  and  $G$  be polynomials from  $J$  which decomposed into isobaric aggregates:

$$F = \varphi_0 + \varphi_1 + \dots + \varphi_k,$$

$$G = \psi_0 + \psi_1 + \dots + \psi_l.$$

Since the leading aggregate of a product is the product of the leading aggregates of factors, the leading aggregate of  $FG$  is  $\varphi_0\psi_0$ , and it follows that

$$W(FG) = W(\varphi_0\psi_0) = W(\varphi_0) + W(\psi_0) = W(F) + W(G).$$

We are now going to prove a lemma which is an analogue to a certain degree of the Eisenstein-Schönemann theorem in the theory of numbers.

**Lemma 3.3.1.** Let  $z$  be a variable which is independent of  $J$ .

Consider the polynomial

$$Z := \varphi + \sum_{\pi=1}^p \psi_\pi z^{\pi k} + \chi z^n, \quad (3.15)$$

where  $n > pk \geq 2$ ,  $\varphi, \chi$  and  $\psi_\pi$  ( $\pi \in \{1, \dots, p\}$ ) are polynomials from  $J$  and  $\varphi\chi \neq 0$ .

Assume that

$$W(\varphi) > \max\{W(\chi), W(\psi_1), \dots, W(\psi_p)\}, \quad (3.16)$$

the polynomial  $\varphi$  has no multiple factors and  $\gcd(\varphi, \chi, \psi_1, \dots, \psi_p) = 1$ .

Suppose that  $Z$  is a product of two polynomials depending on  $z$ :

$$Z = FG, \quad (3.17)$$

$$F = f_0 + f_1 z^{u_1} + \dots + f_s z^{u_s}, \quad 0 < u_1 < \dots < u_s, \quad s \geq 1, \quad (3.18)$$

$$G = g_0 + g_1 z^{v_1} + \dots + g_t z^{v_t}, \quad 0 < v_1 < \dots < v_t, \quad t \geq 1, \quad (3.19)$$

where  $f_\sigma, g_\tau \in J \setminus \{0\}$  ( $\sigma \in \{0, \dots, s\}$ ,  $\tau \in \{0, \dots, t\}$ ).

Then  $\gcd(\varphi, \psi_1, \dots, \psi_p) = 1$ , all exponents  $u_\sigma, v_\tau$  ( $\sigma \in \{0, \dots, s\}$ ,  $\tau \in \{0, \dots, t\}$ ) are divisible by  $k$  and therefore  $n$  is also divisible by  $k$ .

*Proof.* Let  $J_z$  be the set of all integer polynomials in  $z$  with coefficients from  $J$ . By (3.16), we can choose  $\epsilon > 0$  such that  $W(\varphi) > W(\psi_\pi) + n\epsilon$  ( $\pi \in \{1, \dots, p\}$ ),  $W(\varphi) > W(\chi) + n\epsilon$ . In order to define a weight function in  $J_z$  whose restriction on  $J$  is  $W$ , it suffices to put  $W(z) := \epsilon$ . Then  $W(\psi_\pi z^{\pi k}) = W(\psi_\pi) + \pi k W(z) = W(\psi_\pi) + \pi k \epsilon \leq W(\psi_\pi) + p k \epsilon < W(\psi_\pi) + n\epsilon < W(\varphi)$  ( $\pi \in \{1, \dots, p\}$ ) and  $W(\chi z^n) = W(\chi) + n W(z) = W(\chi) + n\epsilon < W(\varphi)$ , so  $W(Z) = W(\varphi)$  and  $W(Z - \varphi) < W(\varphi)$ . From (3.17) - (3.19), we can write  $Z = f_0 g_0 + \phi z$  where  $\phi \in J_z$ , comparing this with (3.15), it follows that  $f_0 g_0 = \varphi$ , so  $W(f_0) + W(g_0) = W(f_0 g_0) = W(\varphi)$ . Note that  $\gcd(f_0, g_0) = 1$  since  $\varphi = f_0 g_0$  has no multiple factors. Denote the leading aggregate of  $\varphi$  by  $\bar{\varphi}$  and the leading aggregates of  $f_0$  and  $g_0$  by  $\bar{f}_0$  and  $\bar{g}_0$ , respectively. Since the leading aggregate of a product is the product of the leading aggregates of factors,  $\bar{\varphi} = \bar{f}_0 \bar{g}_0$ . But  $\bar{\varphi}$  is in (3.15), then  $\bar{\varphi}$  is also the leading aggregate of  $Z$ . From (3.17), it follows that  $\bar{f}_0$  and  $\bar{g}_0$  are the leading aggregates of  $F$  and  $G$ , respectively. Thus  $W(F) = W(f_0) > W(F - f_0)$  and  $W(G) = W(g_0) > W(G - g_0)$ . In particular,

$$W(f_\sigma) < W(f_0) \quad (\sigma \in \{1, \dots, s\}) \quad \text{and} \quad W(g_\tau) < W(g_0) \quad (\tau \in \{1, \dots, t\}). \quad (3.20)$$

We are going to prove that  $\gcd(\varphi, \psi_1, \dots, \psi_p) = 1$ . Suppose not, then there exists an irreducible nonconstant polynomial  $\omega$  from  $J$  which is a common divisor of  $\varphi$  and  $\psi_\pi$  ( $\pi \in \{1, \dots, p\}$ ). Then we have that  $FG = Z \equiv \chi z^n = f_s g_t z^n \pmod{\omega}$ . Let  $F_1 := H_0 z^{U_0} + \dots + H_{s_1} z^{U_{s_1}}$ ,  $G_1 := K_0 z^{V_0} + \dots + K_{t_1} z^{V_{t_1}}$  be polynomials from  $J_z$  such that  $F \equiv F_1 \pmod{\omega}$  and  $G \equiv G_1 \pmod{\omega}$ . If one of the expressions  $F_1, G_1$  consists of more than one term, then we have that

$$\chi z^n \equiv FG \equiv H_0 K_0 z^{U_0+V_0} + \dots + H_{s_1} K_{t_1} z^{U_{s_1}+V_{t_1}} \pmod{\omega} \quad (3.21)$$

where  $U_{s_1} + V_{t_1} > U_0 + V_0$ . Since  $H_0, K_0, H_{s_1}, K_{t_1}$  are not divisible by  $\omega$ , so are  $H_0 K_0$  and  $H_{s_1} K_{t_1}$ . Thus (3.21) is impossible. It follows that  $F \equiv f_s z^{u_s} \pmod{\omega}$  and  $G \equiv g_t z^{v_t} \pmod{\omega}$ . Then  $f_0 \equiv g_0 \equiv 0 \pmod{\omega}$ . Hence  $\varphi = f_0 g_0$  have the factor  $\omega^2$ , which is a contradiction.

In the following part of the proof, the notation  $o(z^N)$  means an integer polynomial which is divisible by  $z^{N+1}$ .

Suppose that not all  $u_\sigma$  are divisible by  $k$ . Let  $u_{\sigma_0}$  be the first  $u_\sigma$  in (3.18) which is not divisible by  $k$ . So  $u_{\sigma_0} = lk + \alpha$  where  $\alpha, l \in \mathbb{Z}$ ,  $0 < \alpha < k$ ,  $l \geq 0$ . Then  $F$  can be rewritten, ordered in ascending powers of  $z$ , as

$$F = \sum_{\lambda=0}^l \gamma_\lambda z^{\lambda k} + \gamma z^{lk+\alpha} + o(z^{lk+\alpha}), \quad \gamma := f_{\sigma_0} \neq 0,$$

where not all  $\gamma_\lambda$  need be  $\neq 0$ . If  $G$  can be written as  $G = \sum_{\lambda=0}^l \delta_\lambda z^{\lambda k} + o(z^{lk+\alpha})$ , then the product  $Z = FG$  must contain the term  $\gamma g_0 z^{lk+\alpha}$ , which cannot be cancelled. Since  $u_{\sigma_0} \leq u_s < u_s + v_t = n$ ,  $\gamma g_0 z^{lk+\alpha} = \gamma g_0 z^{u_{\sigma_0}} \neq \chi z^n$ . This is a contradiction. Thus there exists  $\tau_0 \in \{0, \dots, t\}$  such that  $v_{\tau_0} = rk + \beta$  where  $\beta, r \in \mathbb{Z}$ ,  $0 < \beta < k$ ,  $r \geq 0$  and  $rk + \beta \leq lk + \alpha$ . Then  $G$  can be rewritten, ordered in ascending powers of  $z$ , as

$$G = \sum_{\rho=0}^r \delta_{\rho} z^{\rho k} + \delta z^{rk+\beta} + \dots, \quad \delta := g_{\tau_0} \neq 0.$$

If  $rk + \beta < lk + \alpha$ , then we can interchange  $F$  and  $G$  and arrive at a contradiction as done above. Thus we have only to consider the case  $lk + \alpha = rk + \beta$ . So  $l = r$  and  $\alpha = \beta$ . Then  $FG$  must contain the term  $(f_0\delta + g_0\gamma)z^{lk+\alpha}$ . Since  $lk + \alpha$  is not divisible by  $k$  and  $< n$ ,  $f_0\delta + g_0\gamma = 0$ , so  $f_0g_{\tau_0} = -g_0f_{\sigma_0}$ . Since  $\gcd(f_0, g_0) = 1$ ,  $f_0$  and  $g_0$  have no nontrivial common divisors in  $J$ . Thus  $\frac{g_{\tau_0}}{g_0}$  and  $\frac{f_{\sigma_0}}{f_0}$  must be polynomials from  $J$ , say  $f := \frac{f_{\sigma_0}}{f_0}$  and  $g := \frac{g_{\tau_0}}{g_0}$ . Then  $f_{\sigma_0} = f_0f$  and  $g_{\tau_0} = g_0g$ , so  $W(f_{\sigma_0}) = W(f_0) + W(f) \geq W(f_0)$  and  $W(g_{\tau_0}) = W(g_0) + W(g) \geq W(g_0)$ , which contradicts (3.20). Finally, it follows that  $n$  is divisible by  $k$  since  $n = u_s v_t$ . Therefore Lemma 3.3.1 is proved.  $\square$

### 3.4 An application of Puiseux developments

For  $a \in \mathbb{Q}$ , we will denote the greatest integer which is  $\leq a$  by  $[a]$ .

**Lemma 3.4.1.** Let  $n, m \in \mathbb{N}$  and put

$$r := n \left[ \frac{m+1}{2} \right] - 1, \tag{3.22}$$

$$Z^* := x^m + y^{nm} + f(x, y),$$

where  $f(x, y)$  is an integer polynomial with numerical coefficients such that  $f(0, 0) \neq 0$  and for every  $PP, x^{\lambda}y^{\kappa}$ , which occurs in  $f$ , we have  $\lambda n + \kappa \leq r$ .

Then  $Z^*$  is absolutely irreducible in the domain of integer polynomials.

*Proof.* By (3.22), we obtain

$$r \leq \frac{n(m+1)}{2} - 1 = nm \left( \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2m} - \frac{1}{nm} \right) \leq nm \left( 1 - \frac{1}{nm} \right) < nm.$$

Then every  $PP, x^\lambda y^\kappa$ , which occurs in  $f$ , we have  $\lambda n \leq \lambda n + \kappa \leq r < nm$ , so  $\lambda < m$  and  $\kappa < nm$ . Thus the degree of  $f$  in  $x$  is  $< m$ . We claim that  $Z^*$  cannot have a proper factor which is independent of  $x$ . Suppose that  $Z^* = FG$  where  $F$  and  $G$  are proper integer polynomials and  $F$  is independent of  $x$ . Then  $G$  can be written in the form  $G = g(y)x^m + G_1$  where the degree of  $G_1$  in  $x$  is  $< m$ . Thus  $Z^* = FG = F(g(y)x^m + G_1) = Fg(y)x^m + FG_1$ . Since  $F$  is independent of  $x$ , the degree of  $FG_1$  in  $x$  is  $< m$ . Comparing the coefficients of  $x^m$  on both sides, we have  $1 = Fg(y)$ , so  $F = 1$ , which is a contradiction, and the claim is verified. For  $m = 1$ , it follows that if  $Z^*$  is reducible, then  $Z^*$  must have a proper factor which is independent of  $x$ , contradicting the claim. So  $Z^*$  is irreducible for  $m = 1$ . Now, assume that  $m \geq 2$ .

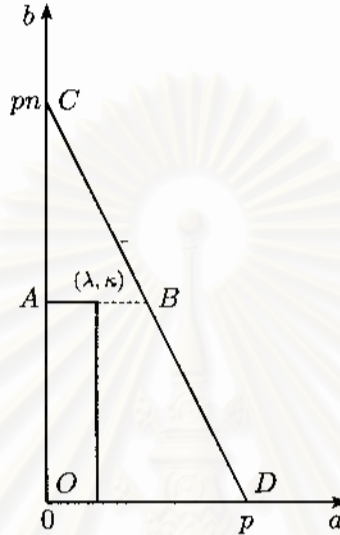
Under our assumption, we see that the baric diagram of  $Z^*$  is:



Suppose that  $Z^* = FG$  where  $F$  and  $G$  are proper integer polynomials. By the above claim, we have that the degrees of  $F$  and  $G$  with respect to  $x$  must be  $> 0$ . Since the degree of  $Z^* = FG$  in  $x$  is  $m$ , it follows that the degree of  $F$  in  $x$  or the degree of  $G$  in  $x$  must be  $\leq \frac{m}{2}$ . Let  $p$  be the degree of  $F$  in  $x$ . We can assume that  $p \leq \frac{m}{2}$  by interchanging  $F$  and  $G$  if necessary. By Theorem 2.7.4, we have

$C_{Z^*} = C_{FG} = C_F + C_G$ . Since the baric polygon of  $Z^*$  is a triangle, the baric polygons of  $F$  and  $G$  must also be triangles similar to the baric triangle of  $Z^*$ .

Then the baric triangle of  $F$  is:



So the degree of  $F$  with respect to  $y$  is  $pn$ . Write  $F = \sum_{\lambda, \kappa} a_{\lambda\kappa} x^\lambda y^\kappa$ . From the above diagram, we have that for any  $\lambda, \kappa$ ,  $\frac{\lambda}{p} \leq \frac{AB}{OD} = \frac{AC}{OC}$  and  $\frac{\kappa}{pn} = \frac{OA}{OC}$ . Then  $\frac{\lambda}{p} + \frac{\kappa}{pn} \leq \frac{AC}{OC} + \frac{OA}{OC} = 1$ , so  $\kappa \leq n(p - \lambda)$ . Rewriting  $F$  as  $F = \sum_{\lambda=0}^p x^\lambda f_{p-\lambda}(y)$ . For  $\lambda \in \{0, 1, \dots, p\}$ , the degree of  $f_{p-\lambda}(y)$  is  $\leq n(p - \lambda)$ .

The function  $x(y)$ , defined by  $Z^* = 0$ , has  $m$  Puiseux developments in decreasing powers of  $y$  in the neighbourhood of  $y = \infty$ . Since the Newton diagram of  $Z^*$  is the hypotenuse of its baric triangle, the first terms of these Puiseux developments are obtained from

$$x^m + y^{nm} = 0, \quad x = \epsilon y^n, \quad \epsilon^m = -1.$$

Then we have  $|x| \sim |y|^n$ , with  $y \rightarrow \infty$ . For  $\lambda \in \{0, 1, \dots, p\}$ , since the degree of  $f_{p-\lambda}(y)$  is  $\leq n(p - \lambda)$ ,  $f_{p-\lambda}(y) = O(y^{n(p-\lambda)})$  ( $y \rightarrow \infty$ ). Since every  $PP$ ,  $x^\lambda y^\kappa$ , which occurs in  $f$ , we have  $\lambda n + \kappa \leq r$ , it follows that  $f(x, y) = O(y^r)$  ( $y \rightarrow \infty$ ). Then  $\frac{f(x, y)}{y^{nm}} = O\left(\frac{1}{y^{nm-r}}\right)$  ( $y \rightarrow \infty$ ). From  $Z^* = 0$ , we obtain

$$x^m = -y^{nm} \left( 1 + \frac{f(x, y)}{y^{nm}} \right) = -y^{nm} \left( 1 + O\left( \frac{1}{y^{nm-r}} \right) \right), \text{ so}$$

$$x = \epsilon y^n \left( 1 + O\left( \frac{1}{y^{nm-r}} \right) \right), \quad \epsilon^m = -1.$$

It follows that for  $\lambda \in \{1, \dots, p\}$ ,

$$x^\lambda = \epsilon^\lambda y^{\lambda n} \left( 1 + O\left( \frac{1}{y^{nm-r}} \right) \right) = \epsilon^\lambda y^{\lambda n} + \epsilon^\lambda y^{\lambda n} O\left( \frac{1}{y^{nm-r}} \right) = \epsilon^\lambda y^{\lambda n} + O\left( \frac{1}{y^{n(m-\lambda)-r}} \right),$$

and multiplying by  $f_{p-\lambda}(y)$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} x^\lambda f_{p-\lambda}(y) &= \epsilon^\lambda y^{\lambda n} f_{p-\lambda}(y) + O\left( \frac{1}{y^{n(m-\lambda)-r}} \right) f_{p-\lambda}(y) \\ &= \epsilon^\lambda y^{\lambda n} f_{p-\lambda}(y) + O\left( \frac{1}{y^{n(m-p)-r}} \right), \end{aligned}$$

where the relation corresponding to  $\lambda = 0$  is trivial.

It is easy to see that  $\left\lfloor \frac{m}{2} \right\rfloor + \left\lfloor \frac{m+1}{2} \right\rfloor = m$ . Then

$$n(m-p) - r = n(m-p) - n \left\lfloor \frac{m+1}{2} \right\rfloor + 1 \geq n \left( m - \left\lfloor \frac{m}{2} \right\rfloor - \left\lfloor \frac{m+1}{2} \right\rfloor \right) + 1 = 1.$$

It follows that for  $\lambda \in \{0, 1, \dots, p\}$ ,

$$x^\lambda f_{p-\lambda}(y) = \epsilon^\lambda y^{\lambda n} f_{p-\lambda}(y) + O\left( \frac{1}{y} \right). \quad (3.23)$$

Note that the formula (3.23) holds for every of the  $m$  branches of  $x(y)$ , assigning to  $\epsilon$  the corresponding one of its  $m$  values. Therefore  $p$  of these branches satisfy the equation

$$F(x(y), y) = 0. \quad (3.24)$$



Taking in (3.23) one of the values of  $\epsilon$  for which (3.24) is satisfied. Summing (3.23) for  $\lambda \in \{0, 1, \dots, p\}$ , we obtain

$$0 = F(x(y), y) = \sum_{\lambda=0}^p x^\lambda f_{p-\lambda}(y) = \sum_{\lambda=0}^p \epsilon^\lambda y^{\lambda n} f_{p-\lambda}(y) + O\left(\frac{1}{y}\right).$$

We see that  $\sum_{\lambda=0}^p \epsilon^\lambda y^{\lambda n} f_{p-\lambda}(y)$  is a polynomial in  $y$  and  $O\left(\frac{1}{y}\right) \rightarrow 0$  ( $y \rightarrow \infty$ ). Then

$$F(\epsilon y^n, y) \equiv \sum_{\lambda=0}^p \epsilon^\lambda y^{\lambda n} f_{p-\lambda}(y) = 0.$$

Taking  $y = 0$ , we have  $F(0, 0) = 0$ . Since  $Z^* = FG$ ,  $f(0, 0) = Z^*(0, 0) = F(0, 0)G(0, 0) = 0$ . This is a contradiction. Hence Lemma 3.4.1 is proved.  $\square$

**Remark 3.4.2.** The number  $r$  in Lemma 3.4.1 can be replaced by  $r^* := \frac{nm}{2} - 1$ . Observe that if  $m$  is even, then  $\left\lfloor \frac{m+1}{2} \right\rfloor = \frac{m}{2}$ , so  $r^* = r$ .

**Corollary 3.4.3.** The absolute irreducibility of  $Z^*$  in Lemma 3.4.1 holds under the hypothesis of the lemma also in the domain of algebraic polynomials, if we replace  $r$  with  $r^* := \frac{nm}{2} - 1$  in the case of odd  $m > 1$ .

*Proof.* Suppose that  $Z^* = FG$  where  $F$  and  $G$  are proper algebraic polynomials.

Let  $M$  be the smallest common denominator of all exponents in  $F$ ,  $G$  and  $w := 2M$ . Then we can write  $Z^*(x, y) = F(x^{1/w}, y^{1/w})G(x^{1/w}, y^{1/w})$ , where  $F(u, v)$  and  $G(u, v)$  can be assumed to be integer polynomials. Replacing  $x^{1/w}$  by  $\xi$  and  $y^{1/w}$  by  $\eta$ , we obtain

$$\xi^{wm} + \eta^{wnm} + f(\xi^w, \eta^w) = Z^*(\xi^w, \eta^w) = F(\xi, \eta)G(\xi, \eta). \quad (3.25)$$

If we replace  $m$  in Lemma 3.4.1 by  $wm$ , since  $w$  is even, the corresponding  $r$  becomes

$$\rho := n \left[ \frac{wm + 1}{2} \right] - 1 = \frac{wnm}{2} - 1.$$

If  $nm = 1$ , then  $n = m = 1$ ,  $r = 1 \cdot \left[ \frac{1+1}{2} \right] - 1 = 0$ . It follows that  $f$  must be a constant, so the conditions of Lemma 3.4.1 are satisfied. If  $nm > 1$ , by our new assumption, we have that for every  $PP$ ,  $x^\lambda y^\kappa$ , in  $f$ ,  $\lambda n + \kappa \leq r^* = \frac{nm}{2} - 1$ . Note that the corresponding  $PP$  in  $f(\xi^w, \eta^w)$  is  $\xi^{w\lambda} \eta^{w\kappa}$  and  $w\lambda n + w\kappa \leq wr^*$ . Since  $wr^* = \frac{wnm}{2} - w < \frac{wnm}{2} - 1 = \rho$ ,  $w\lambda n + w\kappa \leq \rho$ . By Lemma 3.4.1, we have that (3.25) is impossible.  $\square$

**Corollary 3.4.4.** If  $Z^*$  is an algebraic polynomial of the form

$$Z^* := x^\alpha + y^{n\alpha} + \varphi(x^{1/w}, y^{1/w}),$$

where  $\alpha \in \mathbb{Q}^+$ ,  $n, w \in \mathbb{N}$  and  $\varphi$  is an integer polynomial in  $x^{1/w}$  and  $y^{1/w}$  such that  $\varphi(0, 0) \neq 0$  and every  $PP$ ,  $x^\lambda y^\kappa$ , which occurs in  $\varphi$ , we have  $\lambda n + \kappa \leq r^* := \frac{n\alpha}{2} - 1$ , then  $Z$  is absolutely irreducible in the domain of all algebraic polynomials.

*Proof.* Suppose that  $Z^* = FG$  where  $F$  and  $G$  are proper algebraic polynomials. We can choose  $w$  such that  $w\alpha$  becomes an even integer and that the decomposition of  $Z^*$  becomes

$$Z^* = F(x^{1/w}, y^{1/w})G(x^{1/w}, y^{1/w}), \quad (3.26)$$

where  $F$  and  $G$  are integer polynomials in  $x^{1/w}$  and  $y^{1/w}$ . Replacing  $x^{1/w}$  and  $y^{1/w}$  in (3.26) with  $\xi$  and  $\eta$ , respectively, we obtain

$$\xi^{w\alpha} + \eta^{wn\alpha} + \varphi(\xi, \eta) = F(\xi, \eta)G(\xi, \eta). \quad (3.27)$$

If we replace  $m$  in Lemma 3.4.1 by  $w\alpha$ , since  $w\alpha$  is even, the corresponding  $r$  becomes

$$\rho := n \left\lfloor \frac{w\alpha + 1}{2} \right\rfloor - 1 = \frac{wn\alpha}{2} - 1.$$

Since for every  $PP$ ,  $x^\lambda y^\kappa$ , in  $\varphi(x^{1/w}, y^{1/w})$ , we have  $\lambda n + \kappa \leq r^*$ , it follows that for every  $PP$ ,  $\xi^{w\lambda} \eta^{w\kappa}$ , in  $\varphi(\xi, \eta)$ , we have  $w\lambda n + w\kappa \leq wr^* = \frac{wn\alpha}{2} - w < \frac{wn\alpha}{2} - 1 = \rho$ . By Lemma 3.4.1, we have that the decomposition (3.27) is impossible.  $\square$

### 3.5 Irreducibility of polynomials with 2 or 3 terms

First, we consider a rational polynomial with two distinct terms

$$ax_1^{u_1} \dots x_m^{u_m} + bx_1^{v_1} \dots x_m^{v_m}, \quad ab \neq 0. \quad (3.28)$$

**Theorem 3.5.1.** The polynomial (3.28) is absolutely irreducible in the domain of rational polynomials if and only if  $\gcd(u_1 - v_1, \dots, u_m - v_m) = 1$ .

*Proof.* Let  $c := \frac{b}{a}$ ,  $\alpha_\mu := v_\mu - u_\mu$  ( $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ) and  $Z := 1 + cx_1^{\alpha_1} \dots x_m^{\alpha_m}$ . Then  $ax_1^{u_1} \dots x_m^{u_m} + bx_1^{v_1} \dots x_m^{v_m} = ax_1^{u_1} \dots x_m^{u_m} Z$ , so we will prove that  $Z$  is absolutely irreducible if and only if  $\gcd(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m) = 1$ .

( $\rightarrow$ ) Suppose that  $\gcd(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m) = d$  where  $d \in \mathbb{Z}$  and  $d > 1$ . Then for  $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ , we have  $\alpha_\mu = d\beta_\mu$  with  $\beta_\mu \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Let  $P := x_1^{\beta_1} \dots x_m^{\beta_m}$ . Thus we have  $Z = 1 + cP^d = 1 - (-c)P^d = 1 - (\epsilon c^{1/d} P)^d = (1 - \epsilon c^{1/d} P)(1 + \epsilon c^{1/d} P + \dots + (\epsilon c^{1/d} P)^{d-1})$  where  $\epsilon^d = -1$ , so  $Z$  is reducible in the field  $K(c^{1/d}, \epsilon)$ .

( $\leftarrow$ ) Assume  $\gcd(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m) = 1$ . It is well known that it is possible to find  $\alpha_{\mu\nu} \in \mathbb{Q}$  ( $\mu \in \{2, \dots, m\}$ ,  $\nu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ) such that

$$\det \begin{bmatrix} \alpha_1 & \dots & \alpha_m \\ \alpha_{21} & \dots & \alpha_{2m} \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ \alpha_{m1} & \dots & \alpha_{mm} \end{bmatrix} = 1.$$

If we now apply the m-r-transformation,  $y_1 := x_1^{\alpha_1} \dots x_m^{\alpha_m}$ ,  $y_\mu := x_1^{\alpha_{\mu 1}} \dots x_m^{\alpha_{\mu m}}$  ( $\mu \in \{2, \dots, m\}$ ), then  $Z$  becomes  $1 + cy_1$ . Suppose  $Z(x_1 \dots x_m) = F(x_1 \dots x_m)G(x_1 \dots x_m)$  where  $F$  and  $G$  are proper rational polynomials with coefficients in some algebraic extension of  $K$ . Observe that  $x_\mu = y_1^{\gamma_{\mu 1}} \dots y_m^{\gamma_{\mu m}}$  ( $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ) where  $\gamma_{\mu\nu} \in \mathbb{Z}$  ( $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ,  $\nu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ). Introducing the expressions of  $F$  and  $G$  in the variables  $y_1, \dots, y_m$ , we can assume that  $F(y_1, \dots, y_m)$  and  $G(y_1, \dots, y_m)$  are integer polynomials. Since  $F$  and  $G$  are proper, the degrees of  $F(y_1, \dots, y_m)$  and  $G(y_1, \dots, y_m)$  must be  $\geq 1$ . Then the degree of  $1 + cy_1 = Z(y_1 \dots y_m) = F(y_1 \dots y_m)G(y_1 \dots y_m)$  is  $\geq 2$ , which is a contradiction. Hence  $Z(x_1 \dots x_m)$  is absolutely irreducible.  $\square$

Now, we consider a rational polynomial with three distinct terms

$$aP_1 + bP_2 + cP_3, \quad abc \neq 0. \quad (3.29)$$

**Theorem 3.5.2.** The polynomial (3.29) is absolutely irreducible even in the domain of algebraic polynomials, if  $P_2/P_1, P_3/P_1$  are algebraically independent.

If  $P_2/P_1, P_3/P_1$  are not independent and  $P_1, P_2, P_3$  are algebraic  $PP$ 's, then (3.29) is reducible in the domain of algebraic polynomials. If  $P_2/P_1, P_3/P_1$  are not independent and  $P_1, P_2, P_3$  are rational  $PP$ 's, then (3.29) is reducible in the domain of rational polynomials.

*Proof.* The first part of Theorem 3.5.2 follows immediately from Theorem 3.1.8 for  $n = 2$ .

We are now going to prove the remaining part of Theorem 3.5.2. Assume that  $P_2/P_1, P_3/P_1$  are not independent. Let  $a' := \frac{b}{a}$ ,  $b' := \frac{c}{a}$ ,  $P'_1 := P_2/P_1$ ,  $P'_2 := P_3/P_1$  and  $Z := 1 + a'P'_1 + b'P'_2$ . Then obviously,  $a'b' \neq 0$ ,  $P'_1, P'_2$  are not independent and  $aP_1 + bP_2 + cP_3 = aP_1Z$ . We will prove that if  $P_1, P_2, P_3$  are algebraic  $PP$ 's, then  $Z$  is

reducible in the domain of algebraic polynomials, and if  $P_1, P_2, P_3$  are rational  $PP$ 's, then  $Z$  is reducible in the domain of rational polynomials. Put  $P'_1 := x_1^{\alpha_1} \dots x_m^{\alpha_m}$  and  $P'_2 := x_1^{\beta_1} \dots x_m^{\beta_m}$ . Since  $P'_1, P'_2$  are not independent, by Proposition 3.1.2, there exist  $u, v \in \mathbb{Z}$ , not all zero, such that  $P_1^v = P_2^u$ . If  $u = 0$ , we have  $v \neq 0$  and  $P_1^{v'} = 1$ . Thus  $P'_1 = 1$ , so  $P_1 = P_2$ , which is a contradiction. Then  $u \neq 0$ . Similarly, since  $P_1 \neq P_3$ , we have  $v \neq 0$ . We can assume that  $u > 0$  since we can replace  $u$  by  $-u$ . Since  $P_2 \neq P_3$ ,  $P'_1 \neq P'_2$ , so  $u \neq v$ . Note that  $x_1^{v\alpha_1} \dots x_m^{v\alpha_m} = P_1^v = P_2^u = x_1^{u\beta_1} \dots x_m^{u\beta_m}$ . Then we obtain

$$v\alpha_\mu = u\beta_\mu \quad (\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}, u, v \in \mathbb{Z} \setminus \{0\}, u > 0, u \neq v). \quad (3.30)$$

Put  $\gamma_\mu := \frac{\alpha_\mu}{u} = \frac{\beta_\mu}{v}$  ( $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ) and  $Q := x_1^{\gamma_1} \dots x_m^{\gamma_m}$ . So  $P'_1 = Q^u$ ,  $P'_2 = Q^v$  and  $Z = 1 + a'Q^u + b'Q^v$ .

First, assume that  $P'_1, P'_2$  are algebraic  $PP$ 's, not all rational, i.e. not all of the  $\alpha_\mu, \beta_\mu$  are integers. Since  $u, v \neq 0$  and  $u \neq v$ ,  $Z$  has at least two proper linear factors in  $Q$  over some algebraic extension of  $K$ .

Now, assume that  $P'_1, P'_2$  are rational  $PP$ 's, i.e.  $\alpha_\mu, \beta_\mu \in \mathbb{Z}$  ( $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ). Let  $u' := \frac{u}{\gcd(u, v)}$  and  $v' := \frac{v}{\gcd(u, v)}$ . Thus  $u', v' \in \mathbb{Z} \setminus \{0\}$ ,  $u' > 0$ ,  $u' \neq v'$ ,  $\gcd(u', v') = 1$  and  $v'\alpha_\mu = u'\beta_\mu$  ( $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ). It follows that  $u' | \alpha_\mu$  and  $v' | \beta_\mu$  ( $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ), so  $u' | \gcd(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m)$  and  $v' | \gcd(\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m)$ . Then  $\gcd(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m) = u'k$  and  $\gcd(\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m) = v'l$  where  $k, l \in \mathbb{Z}$  and  $k > 0$ . Let  $A_\mu := \frac{\alpha_\mu}{\gcd(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m)}$ ,  $B_\mu := \frac{\beta_\mu}{\gcd(\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m)}$  ( $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ),  $M := v' \gcd(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m)$  and  $N := u' \gcd(\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m)$ . Observe that  $\gcd(A_1, \dots, A_m) = \gcd(B_1, \dots, B_m) = 1$ . Since  $x_1^{MA_1} \dots x_m^{MA_m} = x_1^{v'\alpha_1} \dots x_m^{v'\alpha_m} = x_1^{u'\beta_1} \dots x_m^{u'\beta_m} = x_1^{NB_1} \dots x_m^{NB_m}$ ,

$MA_\mu = NB_\mu$  ( $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ). Thus we have

$|v'|u'k = |v'| \gcd(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m) = |M| = |M| \gcd(A_1, \dots, A_m) = \gcd(MA_1, \dots, MA_m)$   
 $= \gcd(NB_1, \dots, NB_m) = |N| \gcd(B_1, \dots, B_m) = |N| = N = u' \gcd(\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m) =$   
 $u'v'l$ , so  $l = \pm k$ . It follows that  $\gcd(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m)\beta_\mu = ku'\beta_\mu = kv'\alpha_\mu = \pm lv'\alpha_\mu =$   
 $\pm \gcd(\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m)\alpha_\mu$  ( $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ). Hence we can choose  $u$  and  $v$  in (3.30) as  
 $\gcd(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m)$  and  $\pm \gcd(\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m)$ , respectively. Then  $\gamma_\mu \in \mathbb{Z}$  ( $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ),  
 so  $Q$  is a rational  $PP$ . Thus the proper linear factors of  $Z$  in  $Q$  are rational polynomials. Therefore Theorem 3.5.2 is proved.  $\square$

### 3.6 Polynomials with 4 terms. General discussion

If we consider now the general algebraic polynomial with four distinct  $PP$ 's,

$$aP_1 + bP_2 + \gamma P_3 + dP_4, \quad ab\gamma d \neq 0, \quad (3.31)$$

we have to distinguish three cases according as among the quotients

$$P_2/P_1, P_3/P_1, P_4/P_1, \quad (3.32)$$

there are 3, 2 or 1 independents.

**Proposition 3.6.1.** If all quotients (3.32) are independent, then the polynomial (3.31) is always absolutely irreducible in the domain of algebraic polynomials.

*Proof.* This follows from Theorem 3.1.8 with  $n = 3$ .  $\square$

**Proposition 3.6.2.** If there is only one independent among the quotients (3.32), the polynomial (3.31) is always reducible in the domain of algebraic polynomials, and if all quotients (3.32) are rational  $PP$ 's, (3.31) is reducible even in the domain of rational polynomials.

*Proof.* Let  $a' := \frac{b}{a}$ ,  $b' := \frac{\gamma}{a}$ ,  $\gamma' := \frac{d}{a}$ ,  $P'_1 := P_2/P_1$ ,  $P'_2 := P_3/P_1$ ,  $P'_3 := P_4/P_1$  and  $Z := 1 + a'P'_1 + b'P'_2 + \gamma'P'_3$ . Then obviously,  $a'b'\gamma' \neq 0$ ,  $P'_1, P'_2, P'_3$  are not independent and  $aP_1 + bP_2 + \gamma P_3 + dP_4 = aP_1Z$ . We will prove that  $Z$  is reducible in the domain of algebraic polynomials, and if all quotients (3.32) are rational  $PP$ 's, then  $Z$  is reducible in the domain of rational polynomials. Put  $P'_1 := x_1^{\alpha_1} \dots x_m^{\alpha_m}$ ,  $P'_2 := x_1^{\beta_1} \dots x_m^{\beta_m}$  and  $P'_3 := x_1^{\gamma_1} \dots x_m^{\gamma_m}$ . Since  $P'_1, P'_2$  are not independent, we can show as we did in the proof of Theorem 3.5.2 that there exist  $e, f \in \mathbb{Z} \setminus \{0\}$ ,  $f > 0$  such that  $e\alpha_\mu = f\beta_\mu$  ( $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ). Similarly, since  $P'_1, P'_3$  are not independent, there exist  $g, h \in \mathbb{Z} \setminus \{0\}$ ,  $h > 0$  such that  $g\alpha_\mu = h\gamma_\mu$  ( $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ). Then  $fg\beta_\mu = eg\alpha_\mu = eh\gamma_\mu$  ( $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ). Dividing by  $efgh$ , we have  $\frac{\beta_\mu}{eh} = \frac{\alpha_\mu}{fh} = \frac{\gamma_\mu}{fg}$  ( $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ). Let  $u := fh$ ,  $v := eh$  and  $w := fg$ . Then  $u, v, w \in \mathbb{Z} \setminus \{0\}$ ,  $u > 0$  and

$$\frac{\alpha_\mu}{u} = \frac{\beta_\mu}{v} = \frac{\gamma_\mu}{w} \quad (\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}). \quad (3.33)$$

Note that  $u, v, w$  are distinct since  $P'_1, P'_2, P'_3$  are distinct. Put  $\delta_\mu := \frac{\alpha_\mu}{u} = \frac{\beta_\mu}{v} = \frac{\gamma_\mu}{w}$  ( $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ) and  $Q := x_1^{\delta_1} \dots x_m^{\delta_m}$ . So  $P'_1 = Q^u$ ,  $P'_2 = Q^v$ ,  $P'_3 = Q^w$  and  $Z = 1 + a'Q^u + b'Q^v + \gamma'Q^w$ . Writing  $Z = 0$ , since  $u, v, w \neq 0$  and are all distinct, we obtain an algebraic equation of a degree  $\geq 3$ , so  $Z$  has at least three proper linear factors in  $Q$  over some algebraic extension of  $K$ .

Now, assume that  $P'_1, P'_2, P'_3$  are rational  $PP$ 's, i.e.  $\alpha_\mu, \beta_\mu, \gamma_\mu \in \mathbb{Z}$  ( $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ). Since  $\frac{\alpha_\mu}{u} = \frac{\beta_\mu}{v}$  ( $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ), as we did in the proof of Theorem 3.5.2, we can choose  $u$  and  $v$  in (3.33) as  $\gcd(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m)$  and  $\pm \gcd(\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m)$ , respectively. And since  $\frac{\alpha_\mu}{u} = \frac{\gamma_\mu}{w}$  ( $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ), we can also choose  $w$  in (3.33) as  $\pm \gcd(\gamma_1, \dots, \gamma_m)$ . Then  $\delta_\mu \in \mathbb{Z}$  ( $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ), so  $Q$  is a rational  $PP$ . Thus  $Z$  is reducible in the domain of rational polynomials. Therefore Proposition 3.6.2 is proved.  $\square$

From now on, we consider the case that there are exactly two independent ones among the quotients (3.32).

The condition can be expressed in a simpler way, by introducing the representative points of  $P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4$  in the corresponding  $m$ -dimensional space,  $E$ . Let

$$P_1 := x_1^{\alpha_1} \dots x_m^{\alpha_m}, P_2 := x_1^{\beta_1} \dots x_m^{\beta_m}, P_3 := x_1^{\gamma_1} \dots x_m^{\gamma_m}, P_4 := x_1^{\delta_1} \dots x_m^{\delta_m},$$

and the corresponding representative points in  $E$  be

$$X_1 := (\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m), X_2 := (\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m), X_3 := (\gamma_1, \dots, \gamma_m), X_4 := (\delta_1, \dots, \delta_m),$$

respectively. We claim that  $X_1, X_2, X_3, X_4$  are not collinear. Suppose not. Then we

have  $\overrightarrow{X_1 X_2} \parallel \overrightarrow{X_1 X_3}$ ,  $\overrightarrow{X_1 X_2} \parallel \overrightarrow{X_1 X_4}$ , and  $\overrightarrow{X_1 X_3} \parallel \overrightarrow{X_1 X_4}$ . So there exist  $s_1, s_2, s_3 \in \mathbb{R}$

such that  $(\beta_1 - \alpha_1, \dots, \beta_m - \alpha_m) = s_1(\gamma_1 - \alpha_1, \dots, \gamma_m - \alpha_m)$ ,  $(\beta_1 - \alpha_1, \dots, \beta_m - \alpha_m) =$

$s_2(\delta_1 - \alpha_1, \dots, \delta_m - \alpha_m)$  and  $(\gamma_1 - \alpha_1, \dots, \gamma_m - \alpha_m) = s_3(\delta_1 - \alpha_1, \dots, \delta_m - \alpha_m)$ . It

follows that  $\beta_\mu - \alpha_\mu = s_1(\gamma_\mu - \alpha_\mu)$ ,  $\beta_\mu - \alpha_\mu = s_2(\delta_\mu - \alpha_\mu)$  and  $\gamma_\mu - \alpha_\mu = s_3(\delta_\mu - \alpha_\mu)$  ( $\mu \in$

$\{1, \dots, m\}$ ). Since  $\alpha_\mu, \beta_\mu, \gamma_\mu, \delta_\mu \in \mathbb{Q}$  ( $\mu \in \{1, \dots, m\}$ ),  $s_1, s_2, s_3 \in \mathbb{Q}$ . We have that

$$P_2/P_1 = x_1^{\beta_1 - \alpha_1} \dots x_m^{\beta_m - \alpha_m} = x_1^{s_1(\gamma_1 - \alpha_1)} \dots x_m^{s_1(\gamma_m - \alpha_m)} = (x_1^{\gamma_1 - \alpha_1} \dots x_m^{\gamma_m - \alpha_m})^{s_1} = (P_3/P_1)^{s_1}$$

$$P_2/P_1 = x_1^{\beta_1 - \alpha_1} \dots x_m^{\beta_m - \alpha_m} = x_1^{s_2(\delta_1 - \alpha_1)} \dots x_m^{s_2(\delta_m - \alpha_m)} = (x_1^{\delta_1 - \alpha_1} \dots x_m^{\delta_m - \alpha_m})^{s_2} = (P_4/P_1)^{s_2},$$

$$P_3/P_1 = x_1^{\gamma_1 - \alpha_1} \dots x_m^{\gamma_m - \alpha_m} = x_1^{s_3(\delta_1 - \alpha_1)} \dots x_m^{s_3(\delta_m - \alpha_m)} = (x_1^{\delta_1 - \alpha_1} \dots x_m^{\delta_m - \alpha_m})^{s_3} = (P_4/P_1)^{s_3}.$$

Thus any two quotients in (3.32) are not independent, which contradicts our assumption.

Hence  $X_1, X_2, X_3, X_4$  are not collinear. Then the corresponding baric diagram

is either a triangle or a quadrangle.

For the case that the corresponding baric diagram is a triangle, we choose the

notation so that  $X_1, X_2, X_3$  are three summits of the triangle, and if the point  $X_4$  lies

on one of the sides, then the opposite summit is  $X_1$ .



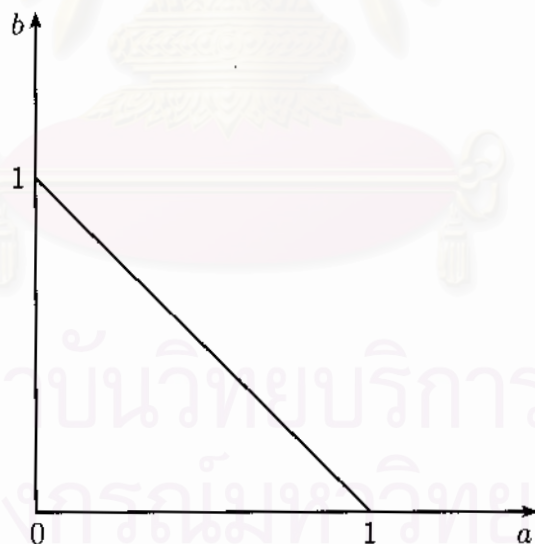
In both cases the points  $X_1, X_2, X_3$  are not collinear.

Let  $a' := \frac{b}{a}$ ,  $b' := \frac{\gamma}{a}$ ,  $\gamma' := \frac{d}{a}$ ,  $P'_1 := P_2/P_1$ ,  $P'_2 := P_3/P_1$ ,  $P'_3 := P_4/P_1$  and

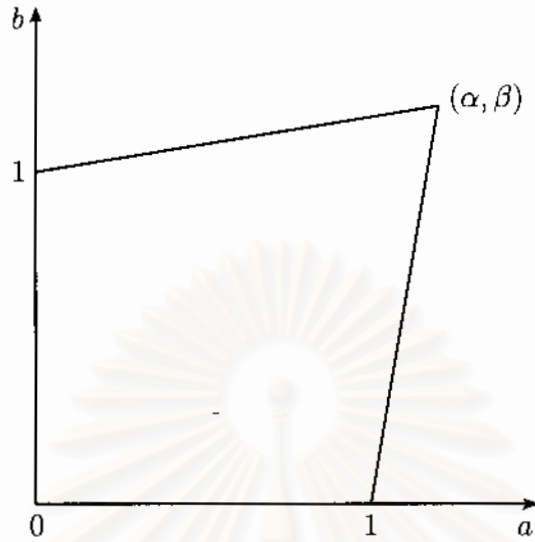
$$Z := 1 + a'P'_1 + b'P'_2 + \gamma'P'_3. \quad (3.34)$$

Obviously,  $a'b'\gamma' \neq 0$ , and  $aP_1 + bP_2 + \gamma P_3 + dP_4 = aP_1Z$ . This amounts to bringing the point  $X_1$  into the origin, and the corresponding term in  $aP_1 + bP_2 + \gamma P_3 + dP_4$  becomes 1. We can assume that  $P'_1, P'_2$  are independent. By an m-r-transformation, we introduce  $y_1 := P'_1$  and  $y_2 := P'_2$  as new variables. Since  $P'_1, P'_2, P'_3$  are not independent, by Proposition 3.1.2, we have that  $P'_3 = P'_1{}^\alpha P'_2{}^\beta = y_1{}^\alpha y_2{}^\beta$  where  $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{Q}$ . Then  $Z = 1 + a'y_1 + b'y_2 + \gamma'y_1{}^\alpha y_2{}^\beta$ .

We now show that  $\alpha, \beta > 0$ . If the baric polygon of  $Z$  is a triangle, this triangle becomes now, in the  $a - b$ -plane:



Note that the point  $(\alpha, \beta)$  lies either inside of this triangle or on the hypotenuse, so  $\alpha, \beta > 0$ . And if the baric polygon of  $Z$  is a quadrangle, since the inside of a convex quadrangle goes by an affine transformation always into the inside of the corresponding quadrangle, the situation is as in the diagram :



We see in this case that also  $\alpha, \beta > 0$ .

Take  $y'_1 := a'y_1$  and  $y'_2 := b'y_2$ . Then  $Z = 1 + y'_1 + y'_2 + cy'_1{}^\alpha y'_2{}^\beta$  where  $c := \frac{\gamma}{a'^\alpha b'^\beta}$ . Let  $M$  be a common denominator of  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ ,  $p := M\alpha$  and  $q := M\beta$ . So  $p, q \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ . We choose  $M$  such that  $p, q \geq 2$ . Then putting  $y'_1 :=: x'^M$  and  $y'_2 :=: y'^M$ , we obtain finally  $Z$  in the form

$$Z = 1 + x'^M + y'^M + cx'^p y'^q \quad (c \neq 0, p, q \in \mathbb{Z}^+). \quad (3.35)$$

If the baric polygon of  $Z$  in (3.35) is a triangle, we must have  $p + q \leq M$ . Since  $p, q > 0$ , it follows that  $p, q < M$ . Suppose that  $Z$  is reducible in the domain of integer polynomials. If we apply Lemma 3.3.1, replacing there  $z$  with  $x'$ ,  $n$  with  $M$  and  $k$  with  $p$ , we obtain in the notations of Lemma 3.3.1 that  $\varphi = 1 + y'^M$ ,  $\psi_1 = cy'^q$  and  $\chi = 1$ . Thus if we use the degree in  $y'$  as weight, all conditions of Lemma 3.3.1 are satisfied. It follows that  $\frac{M}{p} \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ . Similarly,  $\frac{M}{q} \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ . Also, we have that the factors of  $Z$  are polynomials in  $x'^p$  and  $y'^q$ . Since  $p, q \neq M$ ,  $\frac{M}{p}, \frac{M}{q} \geq 2$ . Introduce  $x := x'^p$  and  $y := y'^q$  as new variables. Let  $m := \frac{M}{p}$  and  $n := \frac{M}{q}$ . Then we have to consider the reducible polynomials of the shape

$$Z = 1 + x^m + y^n + cxy \quad (c \neq 0, m, n \geq 2). \quad (3.36)$$

### 3.7 Four term polynomials with a baric triangle

From now on, we assume that  $c \in \mathbb{R}$  or  $\mathbb{C}$ . Without loss of generality, we can assume that in (3.36),  $m \geq n$ . Suppose that (3.36) is reducible in the domain of integer polynomials. Then we have

$$x^m + y^n + cxy + 1 = F(x, y)G(x, y), \quad (3.37)$$

where  $F(x, y)$  and  $G(x, y)$  are proper integer polynomials. Replacing  $y$  with  $y^m$ , we obtain

$$x^m + y^{nm} + cxy^m + 1 = F(x, y^m)G(x, y^m). \quad (3.38)$$

First, assume that  $n \geq 4$ ,  $m \geq 5$ . If for  $f = cxy^m$ ,  $\lambda = 1$ ,  $\kappa = m$ , we have

$$n + m \leq r := n \left[ \frac{m+1}{2} \right] - 1, \quad (3.39)$$

then it follows from Lemma 3.4.1 that (3.38) is impossible.

If  $m$  is even, then  $m = 2k$  for some  $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Since  $m \geq 6$ ,  $k \geq 3$ . The condition (3.39) becomes  $n + 2k \leq nk - 1$ , i.e.  $n(k-1) \geq 2k+1$ . Since  $n \geq 4$ , it suffices to prove that  $4(k-1) \geq 2k+1$ , i.e.  $2k \geq 5$  and this is satisfied since  $k \geq 3$ . On the other hand, if  $m$  is odd, then  $m = 2k+1$  for some  $k \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Since  $m \geq 5$ ,  $k \geq 2$ . The condition (3.39) becomes  $n + 2k + 1 \leq n(k+1) - 1$ , i.e.  $nk \geq 2k+2$ . Since  $n \geq 4$ , it suffices to prove that  $4k \geq 2k+2$ , i.e.  $2k \geq 2$  and this is satisfied since  $k \geq 3$ . Thus (3.38) is impossible. Therefore  $Z$  in this case is irreducible.

Now, we have to consider the remaining cases :

1.  $m \geq 5, 2 \leq n \leq 3,$
2.  $m = 4, 2 \leq n \leq 4,$
3.  $m = 3, 2 \leq n \leq 3,$
4.  $m = 2, n = 2.$

**Lemma 3.7.1.** The factors of  $Z$  in (3.37) cannot be independent of  $y$ . In particular, if  $2 \leq n \leq 3$ , then  $Z$  must have a linear factor in  $y$ .

*Proof.* Suppose that  $Z = F(x)G(x, y)$  where  $F(x)$  and  $G(x, y)$  are proper integer polynomials. Then we have  $x^m + y^n + cxy + 1 = F(x)G(x, y)$ , so the degree of  $G(x, y)$  in  $y$  is  $n$ . Since  $n \geq 2$ , we can write  $G(x, y) = G_2(x, y)y^2 + G_1(x)y + G_0(x)$ , where  $G_2(x, y), G_1(x), G_0(x)$  are integer polynomials and the degree of  $G_2(x, y)$  in  $y$  is  $n - 2$ . So  $x^m + y^n + cxy + 1 = F(x)G_2(x, y)y^2 + F(x)G_1(x)y + F(x)G_0(x)$ . Comparing the coefficients of  $y$  on both sides, we have  $cx = F(x)G_1(x)$ , which is impossible since  $F(x)$  is proper.  $\square$

Moreover, we can similarly show that the factors of  $Z$  in (3.37) cannot be independent of  $x$ .

**Case 1.**  $m \geq 5, 2 \leq n \leq 3.$

By Lemma 3.7.1,  $Z$  has a linear factor in  $y$ , then there exists a polynomial  $\varphi(x)$  such that if we replace  $y$  with  $\varphi(x)$  in  $Z$ , we have  $\varphi^n + x^m + c\varphi + 1 = 0$ , so

$$\varphi^n = -x^m - c\varphi - 1. \quad (3.40)$$

Since  $m \geq 5, 2 \leq n \leq 3$ , the degree of  $\varphi$  is  $\geq 2$ . Denote the highest term of  $\varphi$  by  $\epsilon x^p$  where  $\epsilon^n = -1$ . Then  $p \geq 2$ . From (3.40), since  $np \geq 2p > p + 1$ , it follows that  $np = m$ , so  $p = \frac{m}{n}$ . If we denote the next term in  $\varphi$  by  $\alpha x^q$ , then the first two terms

of  $\varphi^n$  are  $\epsilon^n x^{np} + n\epsilon^{n-1}\alpha x^{(n-1)p+q}$ . Since the first term of  $-cx\varphi$  is  $-\epsilon x^{p+1}$ , we have  $(n-1)p+q = p+1$ , so  $(n-2)p+q = 1$ . If  $n = 3$ , then  $p+q = 1$ , which is impossible since  $p \geq 2$ . Thus  $n = 2$ , so  $q = 1$  and  $m = 2p$ .

Writing  $\varphi$  as  $\varphi = \epsilon x^p + \alpha x + \beta$ , we have

$$\varphi^2 = (\epsilon x^p + \alpha x + \beta)^2 = \epsilon^2 x^{2p} + 2\epsilon\alpha x^{p+1} + 2\epsilon\beta x^p + \alpha^2 x^2 + 2\alpha\beta x + \beta^2. \quad (3.41)$$

Since  $2p = m \geq 5$ ,  $p \geq 3$ , so all exponents on the right side of (3.41) are distinct. Substituting  $\varphi = \epsilon x^p + \alpha x + \beta$  into (3.40), we obtain

$$\varphi^2 = -x^{2p} - cx\varphi - 1 = -x^{2p} - \epsilon x^{p+1} - c\alpha x^2 - c\beta x - 1. \quad (3.42)$$

Comparing the coefficients of  $x^0$  on the right sides of (3.41) and (3.42), we have  $\beta^2 = -1$ , so  $\beta \neq 0$ . Thus  $\varphi^2$  in (3.41) contains the term  $2\epsilon\beta x^p$ , but (3.42) does not contain such term. This is a contradiction. Therefore  $Z$  is irreducible.

**Case 2.**  $m = 4$ ,  $2 \leq n \leq 4$ .

First, assume that  $Z$  has no linear factors in  $y$ . By Lemma 3.7.1, we have  $m = n = 4$ , then  $Z$  becomes

$$Z = x^4 + y^4 + cxy + 1 \quad (3.43)$$

and its decomposition into a product of two quadratic factors can be written as

$$Z = (h + h_1 + c_1)(k + k_1 + c_2), \quad (3.44)$$

where  $h, k$  are homogeneous quadratic polynomials,  $h_1, k_1$  are homogeneous linear polynomials in  $x, y$  and  $c_1, c_2$  are constants. It follows that  $c_1 c_2 = 1$ , so  $c_2 = \frac{1}{c_1}$ .

Moreover, we have  $hk = x^4 + y^4$ . Note that

$$\begin{aligned} x^4 + y^4 &= y^4 \left( \left( \frac{x}{y} \right)^4 + 1 \right) \\ &= y^4 \left( \frac{x}{y} - i\epsilon \right) \left( \frac{x}{y} + i\epsilon \right) \left( \frac{x}{y} - \epsilon \right) \left( \frac{x}{y} + \epsilon \right) \\ &= (x - i\epsilon y)(x + i\epsilon y)(x - \epsilon y)(x + \epsilon y), \end{aligned} \quad (3.45)$$

where  $\epsilon = e^{\pi i/4}$ . We see that  $x^4 + y^4$  has no multiple factors, so  $h$  and  $k$  have no common factors. Since  $Z$  does not have any cubic terms, the cubic terms on the right in (3.44) are  $k_1 h + h_1 k = 0$ . Then  $k_1$  must be divisible by  $k$  and  $h_1$  must be divisible by  $h$ . Since the dimensions of  $k_1$  and  $h_1$  are smaller than the dimensions of  $k$  and  $h$ , it follows that  $h_1 = k_1 = 0$ . The decomposition (3.44) becomes

$$Z = (h + c_1) \left( k + \frac{1}{c_1} \right) = hk + \left( \frac{1}{c_1} h + c_1 k \right) + 1. \quad (3.46)$$

Since in any decomposition  $hk = x^4 + y^4$ , a fixed linear factor of  $x^4 + y^4$  is combined with one of the three other factors, from (3.45), we obtain three possible decompositions of  $x^4 + y^4$ :

$$(A) \quad h = (x - i\epsilon y)(x + i\epsilon y) = x^2 + iy^2, \quad k = (x - \epsilon y)(x + \epsilon y) = x^2 - iy^2,$$

$$(B) \quad h = (x - i\epsilon y)(x - \epsilon y) = x^2 - i\sqrt{2}xy - y^2, \quad k = (x + i\epsilon y)(x + \epsilon y) = x^2 + i\sqrt{2}xy - y^2,$$

$$(C) \quad h = (x - i\epsilon y)(x + \epsilon y) = x^2 + \sqrt{2}xy + y^2, \quad k = (x + i\epsilon y)(x - \epsilon y) = x^2 - \sqrt{2}xy + y^2.$$

Now, we have to choose  $c, c_1$  and  $h, k$  such that (3.46) holds. Comparing the quadratic terms of (3.43) and (3.46), we have

$$\frac{1}{c_1} h + c_1 k = cxy. \quad (3.47)$$

Comparing the coefficients of  $x^2$  on both sides of (3.47), we obtain in all three cases the condition  $\frac{1}{c_1} + c_1 = 0$ , so  $c_1^2 = -1$ , i.e.  $c_1 = \pm i$ . Comparing the coefficients of  $y^2$  on both sides of (3.47), we obtain in Case (A),  $\frac{i}{c_1} - ic_1 = 0$ , so  $c_1 - \frac{1}{c_1} = 0$ , i.e.  $c_1^2 = 1$ . Thus Case (A) is impossible. Similarly, we obtain in Cases (B) and (C)  $\frac{1}{c_1} + c_1 = 0$ , i.e.  $\frac{1}{c_1} = -c_1$ .

Comparing the coefficients of  $xy$  on both sides of (3.47), we obtain in Case (B),  $-\frac{i\sqrt{2}}{c_1} + i\sqrt{2}c_1 = c$ , so

$$c = 2\sqrt{2}ic_1.$$

We obtain in Case (C),  $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{c_1} - \sqrt{2}c_1 = c$ , so

$$c = -2\sqrt{2}c_1.$$

Substituting these values in (3.43) and (3.46), if  $c_1 = i$ , we have the decompositions

$$\begin{aligned} x^4 + y^4 - 2\sqrt{2}xy + 1 &= (x^2 - i\sqrt{2}xy - y^2 + i)(x^2 + i\sqrt{2}xy - y^2 - i) \quad (\text{Case (B)}), \\ x^4 + y^4 - 2\sqrt{2}ixy + 1 &= (x^2 + \sqrt{2}xy + y^2 + i)(x^2 - \sqrt{2}xy + y^2 - i) \quad (\text{Case (C)}). \end{aligned} \tag{3.48}$$

If  $c_1 = -i$ , we have the decompositions

$$\begin{aligned} x^4 + y^4 + 2\sqrt{2}xy + 1 &= (x^2 - i\sqrt{2}xy - y^2 - i)(x^2 + i\sqrt{2}xy - y^2 + i) \quad (\text{Case (B)}), \\ x^4 + y^4 + 2\sqrt{2}ixy + 1 &= (x^2 + \sqrt{2}xy + y^2 - i)(x^2 - \sqrt{2}xy + y^2 + i) \quad (\text{Case (C)}). \end{aligned} \tag{3.49}$$

We see that (3.49) is obtained by replacing  $i$  with  $-i$  in (3.48), i.e. (3.49) is the complex conjugate of (3.48).

Now, we consider the possibility that  $Z$  has a linear factor in  $y$  in Case 2 (as well as in Cases 3 and 4). By Lemma 3.7.1, this linear factor must contain both  $x$  and  $y$ , so it can be written as  $y - H(x)$ , where  $H(x)$  is an integer polynomial of degree  $\geq 1$ . Replacing  $y$  with  $H(x)$  in (3.36), we obtain

$$x^m + H(x)^n + cxH(x) + 1 = 0. \quad (3.50)$$

**Case 2.1.**  $m = 4$ ,  $n = 2$ . Then (3.36) becomes

$$Z = 1 + x^4 + y^2 + cxy, \quad (3.51)$$

and (3.50) becomes  $x^4 + H(x)^2 + cxH(x) + 1 = 0$ . It follows that the degree of  $H(x)$  is 2. Let  $H(x) := \alpha x^2 + \beta x + \gamma$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= x^4 + (\alpha x^2 + \beta x + \gamma)^2 + cx(\alpha x^2 + \beta x + \gamma) + 1 \\ &= (\alpha^2 + 1)x^4 + (2\alpha\beta + c\alpha)x^3 + (\beta^2 + 2\alpha\gamma + c\beta)x^2 + (2\beta\gamma + c\gamma)x + \gamma^2 + 1. \end{aligned}$$

Comparing the coefficients on both sides, we obtain  $\alpha^2 + 1 = 2\alpha\beta + c\alpha = \beta^2 + 2\alpha\gamma + c\beta = 2\beta\gamma + c\gamma = \gamma^2 + 1 = 0$ . Then  $\alpha = \pm i$ ,  $\gamma = \pm i$ . From  $2\alpha\beta + c\alpha = 0$ , we have  $2\beta + c = 0$ , so  $c = -2\beta$ . Replacing  $c = -2\beta$  in  $\beta^2 + 2\alpha\gamma + c\beta = 0$ , we obtain  $\beta^2 + 2\alpha\gamma - 2\beta^2 = 0$ , so  $\beta^2 = 2\alpha\gamma$ .

**Case (a)**  $\alpha = \gamma = i$ . Then  $\beta^2 = -2$ , so  $\beta = \pm\sqrt{2}i$ .

If  $\beta = \sqrt{2}i$ , then  $c = -2\sqrt{2}i$  and  $H(x) = ix^2 + \sqrt{2}ix + i$ . So we have that  $y - ix^2 - \sqrt{2}ix - i$  is a factor of  $Z$  in (3.51). Thus we obtain the decomposition



$$\begin{aligned}
x^4 + y^2 - 2\sqrt{2}ixy + 1 &= (y - ix^2 - \sqrt{2}ix - i)(y + ix^2 - \sqrt{2}ix + i) \\
&= (x^2 + \sqrt{2}x + iy + 1)(x^2 - \sqrt{2}x - iy + 1). \quad (3.52)
\end{aligned}$$

If  $\beta = -\sqrt{2}i$ , then  $c = 2\sqrt{2}i$  and  $H(x) = ix^2 - \sqrt{2}ix + i$ . So we have that  $y - ix^2 + \sqrt{2}ix - i$  is a factor of  $Z$  in (3.51). Thus we obtain the decomposition

$$\begin{aligned}
x^4 + y^2 + 2\sqrt{2}ixy + 1 &= (y - ix^2 + \sqrt{2}ix - i)(y + ix^2 + \sqrt{2}ix + i) \\
&= (x^2 - \sqrt{2}x + iy + 1)(x^2 + \sqrt{2}x - iy + 1). \quad (3.53)
\end{aligned}$$

**Case (b)**  $\alpha = i$ ,  $\gamma = -i$ . Then  $\beta^2 = 2$ , so  $\beta = \pm\sqrt{2}$ .

If  $\beta = \sqrt{2}$ , then  $c = -2\sqrt{2}$  and  $H(x) = ix^2 + \sqrt{2}x - i$ . So we have that  $y - ix^2 - \sqrt{2}x + i$  is a factor of  $Z$  in (3.51). Thus we obtain the decomposition

$$\begin{aligned}
x^4 + y^2 - 2\sqrt{2}xy + 1 &= (y - ix^2 - \sqrt{2}x + i)(y + ix^2 - \sqrt{2}x - i) \\
&= (x^2 - \sqrt{2}ix + iy - 1)(x^2 + \sqrt{2}ix - iy - 1). \quad (3.54)
\end{aligned}$$

If  $\beta = -\sqrt{2}$ , then  $c = 2\sqrt{2}$  and  $H(x) = ix^2 - \sqrt{2}x - i$ . So we have that  $y - ix^2 + \sqrt{2}x + i$  is a factor of  $Z$  in (3.51). Thus we obtain the decomposition

$$\begin{aligned}
x^4 + y^2 + 2\sqrt{2}xy + 1 &= (y - ix^2 + \sqrt{2}x + i)(y + ix^2 + \sqrt{2}x - i) \\
&= (x^2 + \sqrt{2}ix + iy - 1)(x^2 - \sqrt{2}ix - iy - 1). \quad (3.55)
\end{aligned}$$

**Case (c)**  $\alpha = -i$ ,  $\gamma = i$ . Then  $\beta^2 = 2$ , so  $\beta = \pm\sqrt{2}$ .

If  $\beta = \sqrt{2}$ , then  $c = -2\sqrt{2}$  and  $H(x) = -ix^2 + \sqrt{2}x + i$ . So we have that  $y + ix^2 - \sqrt{2}x - i$  is a factor of  $Z$  in (3.51). Thus we obtain the decomposition (3.54).

If  $\beta = -\sqrt{2}$ , then  $c = 2\sqrt{2}$  and  $H(x) = -ix^2 - \sqrt{2}x + i$ . So we have that

$y + ix^2 + \sqrt{2}x - i$  is a factor of  $Z$  in (3.51). Thus we obtain the decomposition (3.55).

**Case (d)**  $\alpha = \gamma = -i$ . Then  $\beta^2 = -2$ , so  $\beta = \pm\sqrt{2}i$ .

If  $\beta = \sqrt{2}i$ , then  $c = -2\sqrt{2}i$  and  $H(x) = -ix^2 + \sqrt{2}ix - i$ . So we have that  $y + ix^2 - \sqrt{2}ix + i$  is a factor of  $Z$  in (3.51). Thus we obtain the decomposition (3.52).

If  $\beta = -\sqrt{2}i$ , then  $c = 2\sqrt{2}i$  and  $H(x) = -ix^2 - \sqrt{2}ix - i$ . So we have that  $y + ix^2 + \sqrt{2}ix + i$  is a factor of  $Z$  in (3.51). Thus we obtain the decomposition (3.53).

**Case 2.2.**  $m = 4$ ,  $n = 3$ . Then (3.50) becomes

$$x^4 + H(x)^3 + cxH(x) + 1 = 0. \quad (3.56)$$

It follows that the degree of  $H(x)$  is  $\leq 1$ . But the degree of  $H(x)$  is  $\geq 1$ , then the degree of  $H(x)$  is 1, so the degree of  $H(x)^3 + cxH(x) + 1$  is 3. Thus (3.56) is impossible. Therefore  $Z$  in this case is irreducible.

**Case 2.3.**  $m = 4$ ,  $n = 4$ . Then (3.50) becomes

$$x^4 + H(x)^4 + cxH(x) + 1 = 0.$$

It follows that the degree of  $H(x)$  is  $\leq 1$ . But the degree of  $H(x)$  is  $\geq 1$ , then the degree of  $H(x)$  is 1. Let  $H(x) := \alpha x + \beta$  where  $\alpha \neq 0$ . Then  $-\alpha \left( x - \frac{1}{\alpha}y + \frac{\beta}{\alpha} \right) = y - \alpha x - \beta$  is a factor of  $Z$ . Thus we can assume in this case that  $Z$  has a factor of the form  $x - uy - v$ .

**Case 3.**  $m = 3$ ,  $2 \leq n \leq 3$ .

**Case 3.1.**  $m = 3$ ,  $n = 2$ . Then (3.50) becomes

$$x^3 + H(x)^2 + cxH(x) + 1 = 0. \quad (3.57)$$

It follows that the degree of  $H(x)$  is  $\leq 1$ . But the degree of  $H(x)$  is  $\geq 1$ , then the degree of  $H(x)$  is 1, so the degree of  $H(x)^2 + cxH(x) + 1$  is 2. Thus (3.57) is impossible. Therefore  $Z$  in this case is irreducible.

**Case 3.2.**  $m = 3, n = 3$ . Then (3.50) becomes

$$x^3 + H(x)^3 + cxH(x) + 1 = 0.$$

It follows that the degree of  $H(x)$  is  $\leq 1$ . But the degree of  $H(x)$  is  $\geq 1$ , then the degree of  $H(x)$  is 1. Similar to Case 2.3, we can also assume in this case that  $Z$  has a factor of the form  $x - uy - v$ .

**Case 4.**  $m = 2, n = 2$ . Then (3.36) becomes  $Z = 1 + x^2 + y^2 + cxy$ . By Lemma 3.7.1, we have that any factor of  $Z$  must contain both  $x$  and  $y$ . Since the degrees of  $Z$  in  $x$  and  $y$  are 2, it follows that the degrees of any factor of  $Z$  in  $x$  and  $y$  are 1. Thus we can assume in this case that  $Z$  has a factor of the form  $x - uy - v$ .

We have now three remaining cases to consider in detail :

$$m = n = 4; \quad m = n = 3; \quad m = n = 2.$$

In any of these cases, we may assume that  $Z$  has a factor of the form  $x - uy - v$ .

Replacing  $x$  in (3.36) with  $uy - v$ , we obtain

$$(uy + v)^m = -y^n - cuy^2 - cvy - 1. \quad (3.58)$$

Since  $v^m = -1, v \neq 0$ , so  $(uy + v)^m$  has  $m + 1$  distinct terms. But the right side of (3.58) has at most four terms, it follows that  $m \leq 3$  and therefore there are no linear factors in the case  $m = n = 4$ .

Assume now  $m = n = 3$ . Then (3.58) becomes

$$u^3y^3 + 3u^2vy^2 + 3uv^2y + v^3 = (uy + v)^3 = -y^3 - cuy^2 - cvy - 1.$$

Comparing the coefficients on both sides, we obtain

$$u^3 = -1, 3u^2v = -cu, 3uv^2 = -cv, v^3 = -1.$$

Then  $(-u)^3 = (-v)^3 = 1$  and  $c = -3uv$ . Let  $\epsilon := uv$  and  $\epsilon_1 := -u$ . So we have  $\epsilon^3 = (uv)^3 = 1$ ,  $\epsilon_1^3 = (-u)^3 = 1$ ,  $c = -3\epsilon$ . Note that  $-v = -\frac{\epsilon}{u} = \frac{\epsilon}{\epsilon_1} = \frac{\epsilon}{\epsilon_1} \epsilon_1^3 = \epsilon \epsilon_1^2$ . If these relations are satisfied, then we have a linear factor  $x + \epsilon_1 y + \epsilon \epsilon_1^2$ , where the three values of  $c$  are  $-3, -3e^{2\pi i/3}, -3e^{4\pi i/3}$ . For each value of  $c$ , taking for  $\epsilon_1$  its three possible values, we obtain in each case three distinct linear factors of  $Z$  and  $Z$  is their product. The simplest of the three formulas is the following formula, classical in the theory of the division of circle:

$$\begin{aligned} x^3 + y^3 + 1 - 3xy &= (x + y + 1)(x^2 + y^2 + 1 - x - y - xy) \\ &= (x + y + 1)(x + e^{2\pi i/3}y + e^{4\pi i/3})(x + e^{4\pi i/3}y + e^{2\pi i/3}). \end{aligned} \quad (3.59)$$

The other formulas are obtained from (3.59) by replacing there  $y$  with  $e^{2\pi i/3}y$  and  $e^{4\pi i/3}y$ .

Finally, assume  $m = n = 2$ . Then (3.58) becomes

$$u^2y^2 + 2uvy + v^2 = (uy + v)^2 = (-1 - cu)y^2 - cvy - 1.$$

Comparing the coefficients on both sides, we obtain

$$u^2 = -1 - cu, \quad 2uv = -cv, \quad v^2 = -1.$$

Then  $c = -2u$ , so  $u^2 = -1 + 2u^2$ , and  $u^2 = 1$ .

Thus we have for  $u = 1$ ,  $c = -2$ ,

$$x^2 + y^2 + 1 - 2xy = (x - y + i)(x - y - i),$$

and for  $u = -1$ ,  $c = 2$ ,

$$x^2 + y^2 + 1 + 2xy = (x + y + i)(x + y - i).$$

Summarizing, we have for  $m = n = 4$  or  $(m = 4, n = 2)$ ,  $Z$  in (3.36) is reducible if and only if

$$c = \pm 2\sqrt{2}, \quad \pm 2\sqrt{2}i; \quad (3.60)$$

for  $m = n = 3$ ,  $Z$  in (3.36) is reducible if and only if

$$c = -3\epsilon, \quad \text{where } \epsilon^3 = 1; \quad (3.61)$$

and for  $m = n = 2$ ,  $Z$  in (3.36) is reducible if and only if

$$c = \pm 2. \quad (3.62)$$

Recall that for  $m = n = 4$ , we obtain the decompositions

$$\begin{aligned} x^4 + y^4 - 2\sqrt{2}xy + 1 &= (x^2 - i\sqrt{2}xy - y^2 + i)(x^2 + i\sqrt{2}xy - y^2 - i), \\ x^4 + y^4 - 2\sqrt{2}ixy + 1 &= (x^2 + \sqrt{2}xy + y^2 + i)(x^2 - \sqrt{2}xy + y^2 - i), \\ x^4 + y^4 + 2\sqrt{2}xy + 1 &= (x^2 - i\sqrt{2}xy - y^2 - i)(x^2 + i\sqrt{2}xy - y^2 + i), \\ x^4 + y^4 + 2\sqrt{2}ixy + 1 &= (x^2 + \sqrt{2}xy + y^2 - i)(x^2 - \sqrt{2}xy + y^2 + i). \end{aligned}$$

We now confirm that each factor in the above decompositions is irreducible, i.e.  $x^2 \pm i\sqrt{2}xy - y^2 \pm i$  and  $x^2 \pm \sqrt{2}xy + y^2 \pm i$  are irreducible. Introduce  $\bar{x} := i\sqrt{i}x$  and  $\bar{y} := \sqrt{i}y$  as new variables. Since  $\bar{x}^2 - \sqrt{2}\bar{x}\bar{y} + \bar{y}^2 + 1$  is in the form (3.36) where  $m = n = 2$  and  $c = -\sqrt{2}$ , it follows that  $\bar{x}^2 - \sqrt{2}\bar{x}\bar{y} + \bar{y}^2 + 1$  is irreducible. Then  $x^2 + i\sqrt{2}xy - y^2 + i = i(\bar{x}^2 - \sqrt{2}\bar{x}\bar{y} + \bar{y}^2 + 1)$  is irreducible. The remaining factors are proved irreducible similarly.

Returning to the general form of the polynomial  $Z$  in (3.34), we have completed now the discussion of the case that  $P'_1$  and  $P'_2$  in (3.34) are independent and  $P'_3 = P_1'^\alpha P_2'^\beta$ ,  $\alpha, \beta > 0$ ,  $\alpha + \beta \leq 1$ , where the inequalities on  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  signify that the baric polyhedron of  $Z$  is a triangle.

We have found that  $Z$  in (3.36) can be only reducible if

$$m = n = 4; \quad m = 4, n = 2; \quad m = n = 3; \quad m = n = 2,$$

that is

$$\alpha = \beta = \frac{1}{4}; \quad \alpha = \frac{1}{4}, \beta = \frac{1}{2}; \quad \alpha = \beta = \frac{1}{3}; \quad \alpha = \beta = \frac{1}{2},$$

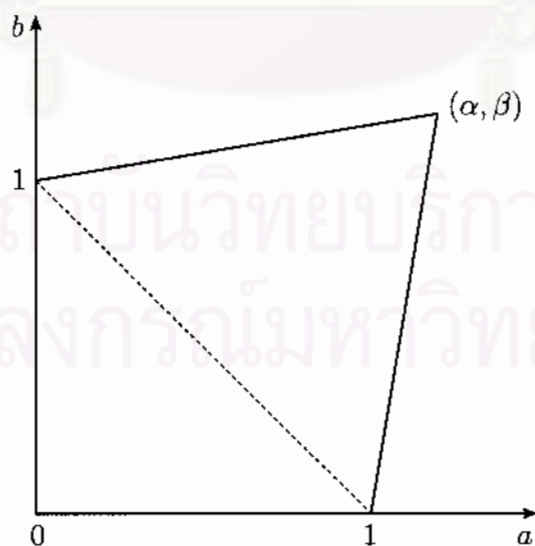
because  $\alpha = \frac{1}{m}$  and  $\beta = \frac{1}{n}$ . For the coefficients  $a', b', \gamma'$ , we obtain the condition  $\gamma' = ca'^\alpha b'^\beta = ca'^{1/m} b'^{1/n}$ , where the values of  $c$  corresponding to the four cases

of  $m, n$  are given by (3.60) - (3.62). If all these conditions are satisfied, then  $Z$  is reducible in the domain of algebraic polynomials.

If we consider the irreducibility of  $Z$  in the domain of rational polynomials, we have to add the condition that  $P_1^{1/m}$  and  $P_2^{1/n}$  are rational since  $x = (a'P_1)^{1/m}$  and  $y = (b'P_2)^{1/n}$ .

### 3.8 Four term polynomials with a baric plane quadrangle

We consider now a general four term polynomial with a baric plane quadrangle. In this case, we start with some reductions of the problem. Assume that one of the terms is 1. Then it can be written as  $1 + aP_1 + bP_2 + \gamma P_3$ , where  $P_1$  and  $P_2$  correspond to the two summits of the baric quadrangle adjacent to the summit at the origin. Since  $P_1, P_2, P_3$  are not independent, by Proposition 3.1.2, we have that  $P_3 = P_1^\alpha P_2^\beta$  where  $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{Q}$ . Introducing  $\xi := aP_1$  and  $\eta := bP_2$  as new variables, so our polynomial can be written as  $1 + \xi + \eta + c\xi^\alpha\eta^\beta$ , where  $c \neq 0$ . The following diagram shows the baric quadrangle of  $1 + \xi + \eta + c\xi^\alpha\eta^\beta$ .



We see from the diagram that  $\alpha, \beta > 0$  and  $\alpha + \beta > 1$ . Let  $n$  be a common denominator of  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ ,  $p := n\alpha$  and  $q := n\beta$ . So  $p, q \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ . We choose  $n$  such that  $p, q \geq 2$ .

Putting  $\xi =: x^n$  and  $\eta =: y^n$ , we obtain

$$Z := 1 + x^n + y^n + cx^p y^q \quad (c \neq 0, p, q \in \mathbb{Z}^+, p + q > n). \quad (3.63)$$

We investigate the case that  $Z$  is reducible in the domain of algebraic polynomials. We can choose  $n$  such that  $Z$  becomes reducible in the domain of rational and even integer polynomials. In fact, we let  $n$  be a common denominator of  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$  and all exponents in the factors of  $Z$ . Then we can restrict ourselves to the consideration of the reducibility of (3.63) in the domain of integer polynomials.

First, assume that  $p = n$  or  $q = n$ . Without loss of generality, assume  $p = n$ . Then (3.63) becomes

$$Z = x^n(1 + cy^q) + (1 + y^n).$$

Let  $R := -\frac{1 + y^n}{1 + cy^q}$  and choose  $n$  such that  $R$  is not a constant. Since  $\frac{Z}{1 + cy^q} = x^n - R$ , it follows that all  $n$  roots of the equation,  $Z = 0$ , with respect to  $x$  have the form  $\epsilon R^{1/n}$  for a fixed choice of  $R^{1/n}$  and an arbitrary  $n$ -th root of unity,  $\epsilon$ . Suppose that the polynomial  $F^*(x, y)$  is a factor of  $Z$  of degree  $m < n$  with respect to  $x$ . Let  $F^* := F_m(y)x^m + F_{m-1}(y)x^{m-1} + \cdots + F_1(y)x + F_0(y)$  and

$$F := \frac{F^*}{F_m(y)} = x^m + \frac{F_{m-1}(y)}{F_m(y)}x^{m-1} + \cdots + \frac{F_1(y)}{F_m(y)}x + \frac{F_0(y)}{F_m(y)}. \quad (3.64)$$

Then  $F$  is also a factor of  $Z$  of degree  $m$  with respect to  $x$ . Thus all roots of the equation,  $F = 0$ , with respect to  $x$  also have the form  $\epsilon R^{1/n}$ , so we can write

$$F = (x - \epsilon_1 R^{1/n}) \cdots (x - \epsilon_m R^{1/n}), \quad (3.65)$$

where  $\epsilon_1, \dots, \epsilon_m$  are  $n$ -th roots of unity. Comparing the coefficients of  $x^0$  on the



right sides of (3.64) and (3.65), we obtain  $\frac{F_0(y)}{F_m(y)} = (-1)^m \epsilon_1 \dots \epsilon_m R^{m/n}$ , then  $R^{m/n} = (-1)^m \frac{F_0(y)}{\epsilon_1 \dots \epsilon_m F_m(y)}$ , so  $R^{m/n}$  is a rational function in  $y$ . Put  $g := \gcd(m, n)$  and  $s := \frac{n}{g}$ . Since  $m < n$ ,  $n \neq g$ . Then  $s > 1$ . There exist  $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$  such that  $an - bm = g$ . It follows that  $R^{1/s} = R^{g/n} = R^{(an-bm)/n} = R^{a-bm/n} = R^a (R^{m/n})^{-b}$ .

Since  $R$  and  $R^{m/n}$  are rational functions in  $y$ ,  $R^{1/s}$  is a rational function in  $y$ , and we can write  $R^{1/s} = \frac{f(y)}{g(y)}$  where  $f$  and  $g$  are relatively prime polynomials in  $y$ . Thus  $\frac{f^s}{g^s} = R = -\frac{1+y^n}{1+cy^q}$ , so  $(1+y^n)g^s = -(1+cy^q)f^s$ . Suppose  $f$  is not a constant. Since  $s > 1$ ,  $f^s$  has the multiple factors which cannot occur in  $(1+y^n)g^s$  as  $f$  and  $g$  are relatively prime and  $1+y^n$  has no multiple factors. Then  $f$  must be a constant. Similarly,  $g$  must be a constant, so  $R = \frac{f^s}{g^s}$  is a constant, which is a contradiction. Hence  $Z$  does not have a factor of degree  $m < n$  in  $x$  for  $p = n$ .

Assume now that  $Z$  has a factor of degree  $n$  in  $x$ , say  $F(x, y)$ . Suppose  $Z = F(x, y)G(x, y)$ . Then  $x^n(1+cy^q) + (1+y^n) = F(x, y)G(x, y)$ , so we can write  $F(x, y) := F_n(y)x^n + F_0(y)$  and  $G(x, y) := G(y)$ . Thus  $x^n(1+cy^q) + (1+y^n) = (F_n(y)x^n + F_0(y))G(y) = F_n(y)G(y)x^n + F_0(y)G(y)$ . Comparing the coefficients on both sides, we obtain  $1+cy^q = F_n(y)G(y)$  and  $1+y^n = F_0(y)G(y)$ , so  $1+cy^q$  and  $1+y^n$  have common factors.

Write  $c := e^{-\xi\pi i}$  with  $\xi \in \mathbb{C}$ . Note that  $1+cy^q = 1+e^{-\xi\pi i}y^q = 1+(e^{-\xi\pi i/q}y)^q = \prod_{\kappa=0}^{q-1} (e^{-\xi\pi i/q}y - e^{(2\kappa+1)\pi i/q}) = (e^{-\xi\pi i/q})^q \prod_{\kappa=0}^{q-1} (y - e^{(\xi+2\kappa+1)\pi i/q}) = c \prod_{\kappa=0}^{q-1} (y - e^{(\xi+2\kappa+1)\pi i/q})$  and  $1+y^n = \prod_{\lambda=0}^{n-1} (y - e^{(2\lambda+1)\pi i/n})$ . Since  $1+cy^q$  and  $1+y^n$  have common factors, there exist  $\kappa \in \{0, \dots, q-1\}$  and  $\lambda \in \{0, \dots, n-1\}$  such that  $e^{(\xi+2\kappa+1)\pi i/q} = e^{(2\lambda+1)\pi i/n}$ . We have that  $\frac{(\xi+2\kappa+1)\pi}{q} \equiv \frac{(2\lambda+1)\pi}{n} \pmod{2\pi}$ , so  $\frac{\xi+2\kappa+1}{q} \equiv \frac{2\lambda+1}{n} \pmod{2}$ . Then  $\frac{\xi+2\kappa+1}{q} = \frac{2\lambda+1}{n} + 2r$  for some  $r \in \mathbb{Z}$ . Thus  $\xi = \frac{(2\lambda+1)q}{n} + 2rq - 2\kappa - 1$ , and  $c = \exp(1 - (2\lambda+1)q/n)\pi i$ .

From now on, assume that  $p \neq n$  and  $q \neq n$ .

We will show that if  $p < n$  and  $q < n$ , then  $Z$  in (3.63) is always irreducible. Suppose that  $Z$  is reducible. If we apply Lemma 3.3.1, replacing there  $z$  with  $x$  and  $k$  with  $p$ , we obtain in the notations of Lemma 3.3.1 that  $\varphi = 1 + y^n$ ,  $\psi_1 = cy^q$  and  $\chi = 1$ . Thus if we use the degree in  $y$  as weight, all conditions of Lemma 3.3.1 are satisfied. It follows that  $n$  is divisible by  $p$ . And similarly,  $n$  is divisible by  $q$ . Then  $\frac{n}{p}, \frac{n}{q} \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ . Since  $p, q \neq n$ ,  $\frac{n}{p}, \frac{n}{q} \geq 2$ . So  $p, q \leq \frac{n}{2}$ . Thus  $p + q \leq n$ , which is a contradiction.

From now on, we assume that  $p > n$  and  $q \neq n$  since we can interchange  $x$  with  $y$ . Observe that if  $q < n$ , then the form (3.63) can be somewhat simplified. In this case, we can apply Lemma 3.3.1, replacing there  $z$  with  $x$  and  $n$  with  $p$ , we obtain in the notations of Lemma 3.3.1 that  $\varphi = 1 + y^n$ ,  $\psi_1 = 1$  and  $\chi = cy^q$ . Thus if we use the degree in  $y$  as weight, all conditions of Lemma 3.3.1 are satisfied. It follows that  $p$  is divisible by  $n$ . Then  $p = nr$  for some  $r \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ . Since  $p \neq n$ ,  $r > 1$ . By changing the notations, we can reduce (3.63) to the form

$$Z = 1 + x + y^n + cx^p y^q \quad (c \neq 0, 1 < q < n, p > 1). \quad (3.66)$$

**Lemma 3.8.1.** If  $Z$  in (3.66) is reducible, then the factors of  $Z$  cannot be independent of  $x$ .

*Proof.* Suppose that  $Z = F(y)G(x, y)$  where  $F(y)$  and  $G(x, y)$  are proper integer polynomials. Then we have  $1 + x + y^n + cx^p y^q = F(y)G(x, y)$ , so the degree of  $G(x, y)$  in  $x$  is  $p$ . Since  $p \geq 2$ , we can write  $G(x, y) = G_2(x, y)x^2 + G_1(y)x + G_0(y)$ , where  $G_2(x, y), G_1(y), G_0(y)$  are integer polynomials and the degree of  $G_2(x, y)$  in  $x$  is  $p - 2$ . So  $1 + x + y^n + cx^p y^q = F(y)G_2(x, y)x^2 + F(y)G_1(y)x + F(y)G_0(y)$ . Comparing the

coefficients of  $x$  on both sides, we have  $1 = F(y)G_1(y)$ , which is impossible since  $F(y)$  is proper.  $\square$

We will show that in the cases  $p = 2$  and  $p = 3$  (3.66) is always irreducible. First, consider the case  $p = 2$ , then (3.66) becomes

$$Z = 1 + x + y^n + cx^2y^q.$$

Suppose that  $Z$  is reducible. By Lemma 3.8.1, we have the decomposition

$$\begin{aligned} 1 + x + y^n + cx^2y^q &= (F_1(y)x + F_0(y))(G_1(y)x + G_0(y)) \\ &= F_1(y)G_1(y)x^2 + (F_1(y)G_0(y) + F_0(y)G_1(y))x + F_0(y)G_0(y), \end{aligned}$$

where  $F_1(y), G_1(y) \neq 0$ . Comparing the coefficients on both sides, we obtain

$$cy^q = F_1(y)G_1(y), \quad (3.67)$$

$$1 = F_1(y)G_0(y) + F_0(y)G_1(y), \quad (3.68)$$

$$1 + y^n = F_0(y)G_0(y). \quad (3.69)$$

By (3.69), since  $F_0(y)$  and  $G_0(y)$  have coefficients in a field, we may assume that both are monic. Write  $F_0(y) = y^{f_0} + \gamma_{f_0-1}y^{f_0-1} + \dots + \gamma_1y + \gamma_0$ . If  $\gamma_0 = 0$ , then  $y | F_0(y)$ . By (3.69), it follows that  $y | (1 + y^n)$ , which is impossible. Thus  $\gamma_0 \neq 0$ . And write  $G_0(y) = y^{g_0} + \delta_{g_0-1}y^{g_0-1} + \dots + \delta_1y + \delta_0$ . Also, by (3.69), it follows that  $\delta_0 \neq 0$ . By (3.67), we can write  $F_1(y) = \alpha y^{f_1}$  and  $G_1(y) = \beta y^{g_1}$  where  $\alpha, \beta \neq 0$ ,  $\alpha\beta = c$ ,  $f_1, g_1 \geq 0$  and  $f_1 + g_1 = q$ . Then (3.68) becomes

$$1 = \alpha y^{f_1}G_0(y) + \beta y^{g_1}F_0(y). \quad (3.70)$$

If  $f_1, g_1 > 0$ , then the right side of (3.70) is divisible by  $y$ , so  $y|1$ , which is impossible.

Thus  $f_1 = 0$  or  $g_1 = 0$ .

**Case 1.**  $f_1 = 0$ . Then  $g_1 = q$ ,  $F_1(y) = \alpha$  and  $G_1(y) = \beta y^q$ . Comparing the degrees of (3.68), we have  $g_0 = f_0 + q$ . Comparing the degrees of (3.69), we have  $n = f_0 + g_0$ , so  $n = f_0 + (f_0 + q) = q + 2f_0$ . Since  $n > q$ , it follows that  $f_0 > 0$ . By (3.68), we have

$$1 = \alpha G_0(y) + \beta y^q F_0(y).$$

Comparing the coefficients of  $y^{g_0}$  on both sides, we obtain  $0 = \alpha + \beta$ , so  $\alpha = -\beta$ . Then  $G_0(y) = \frac{1}{\alpha}(1 - \beta y^q F_0(y)) = \frac{1}{\alpha}(1 + \alpha y^q F_0(y))$ . Replacing  $G_0(y) = \frac{1}{\alpha}(1 + \alpha y^q F_0(y))$  in (3.69), we obtain  $1 + y^{q+2f_0} = \frac{1}{\alpha} F_0(y)(1 + \alpha y^q F_0(y))$ , so

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha + \alpha y^{q+2f_0} &= F_0(y) + \alpha y^q (F_0(y))^2 \\ &= (y^{f_0} + \gamma_{f_0-1} y^{f_0-1} + \cdots + \gamma_1 y + \gamma_0) \\ &\quad + \alpha y^q [y^{2f_0} + (\gamma_{f_0-1} + \gamma_{f_0-1}) y^{2f_0-1} \\ &\quad + (\gamma_{f_0-2} + \gamma_{f_0-1} \gamma_{f_0-1} + \gamma_{f_0-2}) y^{2f_0-2} \\ &\quad + \cdots + (\gamma_0 + \gamma_{f_0-1} \gamma_1 + \gamma_{f_0-2} \gamma_2 + \cdots + \gamma_0) y^{f_0} \\ &\quad + \cdots + (\gamma_2 \gamma_0 + \gamma_1 \gamma_1 + \gamma_0 \gamma_2) y^2 + (\gamma_1 \gamma_0 + \gamma_0 \gamma_1) y + \gamma_0^2]. \end{aligned}$$

Comparing the coefficients of  $y^{q+2f_0-1}$  on both sides, we obtain  $0 = \alpha(\gamma_{f_0-1} + \gamma_{f_0-1})$ .

Since  $\alpha \neq 0$ ,  $\gamma_{f_0-1} = 0$ . Comparing the coefficients of  $y^{q+2f_0-2}$  on both sides, we

obtain  $0 = \alpha(\gamma_{f_0-2} + \gamma_{f_0-1} \gamma_{f_0-1} + \gamma_{f_0-2})$ . Since  $\alpha \neq 0$  and  $\gamma_{f_0-1} = 0$ ,  $\gamma_{f_0-2} = 0$ . Also,

by comparing the coefficients of  $y^{q+2f_0-3}, \dots, y^{q+2f_0-f_0+1}$  on both sides, we obtain

$\gamma_{f_0-3} = \cdots = \gamma_{f_0-f_0+1} = 0$ . Finally, Comparing the coefficients of  $y^{q+2f_0-f_0} = y^{q+f_0}$

on both sides, we obtain  $0 = \alpha(\gamma_0 + \gamma_{f_0-1} \gamma_1 + \gamma_{f_0-2} \gamma_2 + \cdots + \gamma_0)$ . Since  $\alpha \neq 0$  and

$\gamma_{f_0-1} = \cdots = \gamma_1 = 0$ ,  $\gamma_0 = 0$ . This is a contradiction.

**Case 2.**  $g_1 = 0$ . Then  $f_1 = q$ ,  $F_1(y) = \alpha y^q$  and  $G_1(y) = \beta$ . Comparing the degrees of (3.68), we have  $q + g_0 = f_0$ . Comparing the degrees of (3.69), we have  $n = f_0 + g_0$ , so  $n = (q + g_0) + g_0 = q + 2g_0$ . Since  $n > q$ , it follows that  $g_0 > 0$ . By (3.68), we have

$$1 = \alpha y^q G_0(y) + \beta F_0(y).$$

Comparing the coefficients of  $y^{f_0}$  on both sides, we obtain  $0 = \alpha + \beta$ , so  $\beta = -\alpha$ . Then  $F_0(y) = \frac{1}{\beta}(1 - \alpha y^q G_0(y)) = \frac{1}{\beta}(1 + \beta y^q G_0(y))$ . Replacing  $F_0(y) = \frac{1}{\beta}(1 + \beta y^q G_0(y))$  in (3.69), we obtain  $1 + y^{q+2g_0} = \frac{1}{\beta}(1 + \beta y^q G_0(y)) G_0(y)$ , so

$$\begin{aligned} \beta + \beta y^{q+2g_0} &= G_0(y) + \beta y^q (G_0(y))^2 \\ &= (y^{g_0} + \delta_{g_0-1} y^{g_0-1} + \cdots + \delta_1 y + \delta_0) \\ &\quad + \beta y^q [y^{2g_0} + (\delta_{g_0-1} + \delta_{g_0-1}) y^{2g_0-1} \\ &\quad + (\delta_{g_0-2} + \delta_{g_0-1} \delta_{g_0-1} + \delta_{g_0-2}) y^{2g_0-2} \\ &\quad + \cdots + (\delta_0 + \delta_{g_0-1} \delta_1 + \delta_{g_0-2} \delta_2 + \cdots + \delta_0) y^{g_0} \\ &\quad + \cdots + (\delta_2 \delta_0 + \delta_1 \delta_1 + \delta_0 \delta_2) y^2 + (\delta_1 \delta_0 + \delta_0 \delta_1) y + \delta_0^2]. \end{aligned}$$

Comparing the coefficients of  $y^{q+2g_0-1}$  on both sides, we obtain  $0 = \beta(\delta_{g_0-1} + \delta_{g_0-1})$ . Since  $\beta \neq 0$ ,  $\delta_{g_0-1} = 0$ . Comparing the coefficients of  $y^{q+2g_0-2}$  on both sides, we obtain  $0 = \beta(\delta_{g_0-2} + \delta_{g_0-1} \delta_{g_0-1} + \delta_{g_0-2})$ . Since  $\beta \neq 0$  and  $\delta_{g_0-1} = 0$ ,  $\delta_{g_0-2} = 0$ . Also, by comparing the coefficients of  $y^{q+2g_0-3}, \dots, y^{q+2g_0-g_0+1}$  on both sides, we obtain  $\delta_{g_0-3} = \cdots = \delta_{g_0-g_0+1} = 0$ . Finally, Comparing the coefficients of  $y^{q+2g_0-g_0} = y^{q+g_0}$  on both sides, we obtain  $0 = \beta(\delta_0 + \delta_{g_0-1} \delta_1 + \delta_{g_0-2} \delta_2 + \cdots + \delta_0)$ . Since  $\beta \neq 0$  and  $\delta_{g_0-1} = \cdots = \delta_1 = 0$ ,  $\delta_0 = 0$ . This is a contradiction.

Hence for the case  $p = 2$ , (3.66) is irreducible.

Now, consider the case  $p = 3$ , then (3.66) becomes

$$Z = 1 + x + y^n + cx^3y^q.$$

Suppose that  $Z$  is reducible. By Lemma 3.8.1, we have the decomposition

$$\begin{aligned} 1 + x + y^n + cx^3y^q &= (F_1(y)x + F_0(y))(G_2(y)x^2 + G_1(y)x + G_0(y)) \\ &= F_1(y)G_2(y)x^3 + (F_1(y)G_1(y) + F_0(y)G_2(y))x^2 \\ &\quad + (F_1(y)G_0(y) + F_0(y)G_1(y))x + F_0(y)G_0(y), \end{aligned}$$

where  $F_1(y), G_2(y) \neq 0$ . Comparing the coefficients on both sides, we obtain

$$cy^q = F_1(y)G_2(y), \quad (3.71)$$

$$0 = F_1(y)G_1(y) + F_0(y)G_2(y), \quad (3.72)$$

$$1 = F_1(y)G_0(y) + F_0(y)G_1(y), \quad (3.73)$$

$$1 + y^n = F_0(y)G_0(y). \quad (3.74)$$

By (3.74), since  $F_0(y)$  and  $G_0(y)$  have coefficients in a field, we may assume that both are monic. Write  $F_0(y) = y^{f_0} + \gamma_{f_0-1}y^{f_0-1} + \dots + \gamma_1y + \gamma_0$ . If  $\gamma_0 = 0$ , then  $y \mid F_0(y)$ . By (3.74), it follows that  $y \mid (1 + y^n)$ , which is impossible. Thus  $\gamma_0 \neq 0$ . By (3.71), we can write  $F_1(y) = \alpha y^{f_1}$  and  $G_2(y) = \beta y^{g_2}$  where  $\alpha, \beta \neq 0$ ,  $\alpha\beta = c$ ,  $f_1, g_2 \geq 0$  and  $f_1 + g_2 = q$ . Then (3.72) becomes

$$0 = \alpha y^{f_1}G_1(y) + \beta y^{g_2}F_0(y). \quad (3.75)$$

If  $f_1 > g_2 > 0$ , dividing (3.75) by  $y^{g_2}$ , we have

$$0 = \alpha y^{f_1 - g_2} G_1(y) + \beta F_0(y).$$

Then  $y | F_0(y)$ . By (3.74), it follows that  $y | (1 + y^n)$ , which is impossible.

If  $g_2 > f_1 > 0$ , dividing (3.75) by  $y^{f_1}$ , we have

$$0 = \alpha G_1(y) + \beta y^{g_2 - f_1} F_0(y).$$

Then  $y | G_1(y)$ . By (3.73), it follows that  $y | (1 - F_1(y)G_0(y))$ . Since  $f_1 > 0$ ,  $y | F_1(y)$ .

Thus  $y | 1$ , which is impossible.

We have now three remaining cases to consider :

$$f_1 = g_2 = \frac{q}{2}; \quad f_1 = 0; \quad g_2 = 0.$$

**Case 1.**  $f_1 = g_2 = \frac{q}{2}$ . Then  $F_1(y) = \alpha y^{q/2}$  and  $G_2(y) = \beta y^{q/2}$ . Denote the degrees of  $G_0(y)$  and  $G_1(y)$  by  $g_0$  and  $g_1$ , respectively. Comparing the degrees of (3.72), we have  $\frac{q}{2} + g_1 = f_0 + \frac{q}{2}$ , so  $g_1 = f_0$ . Comparing the degrees of (3.73), we have  $\frac{q}{2} + g_0 = f_0 + g_1$ , so  $g_0 = f_0 + g_1 - \frac{q}{2} = 2f_0 - \frac{q}{2}$ . Comparing the degrees of (3.74), we have  $n = f_0 + g_0$ , so  $n = f_0 + \left(2f_0 - \frac{q}{2}\right) = 3f_0 - \frac{q}{2}$ . Since  $n > q$ , it follows that  $f_0 > \frac{q}{2}$ . By (3.72), we have  $0 = \alpha y^{q/2} G_1(y) + \beta y^{q/2} F_0(y)$ . Then  $G_1(y) = -\frac{\beta}{\alpha} F_0(y)$ . By (3.73), we have

$$1 = \alpha y^{q/2} G_0(y) - \frac{\beta}{\alpha} (F_0(y))^2.$$

Comparing the coefficients of  $y^{2f_0}$  on both sides, we obtain  $0 = \alpha - \frac{\beta}{\alpha}$ , so  $\alpha = \frac{\beta}{\alpha}$ . Then  $G_0(y) = \frac{1}{\alpha y^{q/2}} \left(1 + \frac{\beta}{\alpha} (F_0(y))^2\right) = \frac{1}{\alpha y^{q/2}} \left(1 + \alpha (F_0(y))^2\right)$ . Replacing  $G_0(y) = \frac{1}{\alpha y^{q/2}} \left(1 + \alpha (F_0(y))^2\right)$  in (3.74), we obtain  $1 + y^{3f_0 - q/2} = \frac{1}{\alpha y^{q/2}} F_0(y) \left(1 + \alpha (F_0(y))^2\right)$ ,

so

$$\alpha y^{a/2} + \alpha y^{3f_0} = F_0(y) \left( 1 + \alpha (F_0(y))^2 \right) \quad (3.76)$$

If  $y \mid F_0(y)$ , by (3.74), it follows that  $y \mid (1 + y^n)$ , which is impossible. Then  $y \nmid F_0(y)$ .

By (3.76), it follows that  $y \mid \left( 1 + \alpha (F_0(y))^2 \right)$ . Note that  $1 + \alpha (F_0(y))^2 = 1 + \alpha [y^{2f_0} + (\gamma_{f_0-1} + \gamma_{f_0-1})y^{2f_0-1} + (\gamma_{f_0-2} + \gamma_{f_0-1}\gamma_{f_0-1} + \gamma_{f_0-2})y^{2f_0-2} + \dots + (\gamma_0 + \gamma_{f_0-1}\gamma_1 + \gamma_{f_0-2}\gamma_2 + \dots + \gamma_0)y^{f_0} + \dots + (\gamma_2\gamma_0 + \gamma_1\gamma_1 + \gamma_0\gamma_2)y^2 + (\gamma_1\gamma_0 + \gamma_0\gamma_1)y + \gamma_0^2]$ . Thus  $1 + \alpha\gamma_0^2 = 0$ .

Then (3.76) becomes

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha y^{a/2} + \alpha y^{3f_0} &= (y^{f_0} + \gamma_{f_0-1}y^{f_0-1} + \dots + \gamma_1y + \gamma_0)\alpha [y^{2f_0} \\ &\quad + (\gamma_{f_0-1} + \gamma_{f_0-1})y^{2f_0-1} + (\gamma_{f_0-2} + \gamma_{f_0-1}\gamma_{f_0-1} + \gamma_{f_0-2})y^{2f_0-2} \\ &\quad + \dots + (\gamma_0 + \gamma_{f_0-1}\gamma_1 + \gamma_{f_0-2}\gamma_2 + \dots + \gamma_0)y^{f_0} \\ &\quad + \dots + (\gamma_2\gamma_0 + \gamma_1\gamma_1 + \gamma_0\gamma_2)y^2 + (\gamma_1\gamma_0 + \gamma_0\gamma_1)y], \text{ so} \\ y^{a/2} + y^{3f_0} &= (y^{f_0} + \gamma_{f_0-1}y^{f_0-1} + \dots + \gamma_1y + \gamma_0)[y^{2f_0} \\ &\quad + (\gamma_{f_0-1} + \gamma_{f_0-1})y^{2f_0-1} + (\gamma_{f_0-2} + \gamma_{f_0-1}\gamma_{f_0-1} + \gamma_{f_0-2})y^{2f_0-2} \\ &\quad + \dots + (\gamma_0 + \gamma_{f_0-1}\gamma_1 + \gamma_{f_0-2}\gamma_2 + \dots + \gamma_0)y^{f_0} \\ &\quad + \dots + (\gamma_2\gamma_0 + \gamma_1\gamma_1 + \gamma_0\gamma_2)y^2 + (\gamma_1\gamma_0 + \gamma_0\gamma_1)y]. \end{aligned}$$

Comparing the coefficients of  $y^{3f_0-1}$  on both sides, we obtain  $0 = (\gamma_{f_0-1} + \gamma_{f_0-1}) + \gamma_{f_0-1}$ . Then  $\gamma_{f_0-1} = 0$ . Comparing the coefficients of  $y^{3f_0-2}$  on both sides, we obtain  $0 = (\gamma_{f_0-2} + \gamma_{f_0-1}\gamma_{f_0-1} + \gamma_{f_0-2}) + \gamma_{f_0-1}(\gamma_{f_0-1} + \gamma_{f_0-1}) + \gamma_{f_0-2}$ . Since  $\gamma_{f_0-1} = 0$ ,  $\gamma_{f_0-2} = 0$ . Also, by comparing the coefficients of  $y^{3f_0-3}, \dots, y^{3f_0-f_0+1}$  on both sides, we obtain  $\gamma_{f_0-3} = \dots = \gamma_{f_0-f_0+1} = 0$ . Finally, Comparing the coefficients of  $y^{3f_0-f_0} = y^{2f_0}$  on both sides, we obtain  $0 = (\gamma_0 + \gamma_{f_0-1}\gamma_1 + \gamma_{f_0-2}\gamma_2 + \dots + \gamma_0) + \dots + \gamma_1(\gamma_{f_0-1} + \gamma_{f_0-1}) + \gamma_0$ . Since  $\gamma_{f_0-1} = \dots = \gamma_1 = 0$ ,  $\gamma_0 = 0$ . This is a contradiction.



**Case 2.**  $f_1 = 0$ . Then  $g_2 = q$ ,  $F_1(y) = \alpha$  and  $G_2(y) = \beta y^q$ . Denote the degrees of  $G_0(y)$  and  $G_1(y)$  by  $g_0$  and  $g_1$ , respectively. Comparing the degrees of (3.72), we have  $g_1 = f_0 + q$ . Comparing the degrees of (3.73), we have  $g_0 = f_0 + g_1$ , so  $g_0 = f_0 + (f_0 + q) = 2f_0 + q$ . Comparing the degrees of (3.74), we have  $n = f_0 + g_0$ , so  $n = f_0 + (2f_0 + q) = 3f_0 + q$ . Since  $n > q$ , it follows that  $f_0 > 0$ . By (3.72), we have  $0 = \alpha G_1(y) + \beta y^q F_0(y)$ . Then  $G_1(y) = -\frac{\beta}{\alpha} y^q F_0(y)$ . By (3.73), we have

$$1 = \alpha G_0(y) - \frac{\beta}{\alpha} y^q (F_0(y))^2.$$

Comparing the coefficients of  $y^{g_0}$  on both sides, we obtain  $0 = \alpha - \frac{\beta}{\alpha}$ , so  $\alpha = \frac{\beta}{\alpha}$ . Then  $G_0(y) = \frac{1}{\alpha} \left( 1 + \frac{\beta}{\alpha} y^q (F_0(y))^2 \right) = \frac{1}{\alpha} \left( 1 + \alpha y^q (F_0(y))^2 \right)$ . Replacing  $G_0(y) = \frac{1}{\alpha} \left( 1 + \alpha y^q (F_0(y))^2 \right)$  in (3.74), we obtain  $1 + y^{3f_0+q} = \frac{1}{\alpha} F_0(y) \left( 1 + \alpha y^q (F_0(y))^2 \right)$ , so

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha + \alpha y^{3f_0+q} &= F_0(y) + \alpha y^q F_0(y) (F_0(y))^2 \\ &= (y^{f_0} + \gamma_{f_0-1} y^{f_0-1} + \cdots + \gamma_1 y + \gamma_0) + \alpha y^q (y^{f_0} + \gamma_{f_0-1} y^{f_0-1} \\ &\quad + \cdots + \gamma_1 y + \gamma_0) [y^{2f_0} + (\gamma_{f_0-1} + \gamma_{f_0-1}) y^{2f_0-1} \\ &\quad + (\gamma_{f_0-2} + \gamma_{f_0-1} \gamma_{f_0-1} + \gamma_{f_0-2}) y^{2f_0-2} \\ &\quad + \cdots + (\gamma_0 + \gamma_{f_0-1} \gamma_1 + \gamma_{f_0-2} \gamma_2 + \cdots + \gamma_0) y^{f_0} \\ &\quad + \cdots + (\gamma_2 \gamma_0 + \gamma_1 \gamma_1 + \gamma_0 \gamma_2) y^2 + (\gamma_1 \gamma_0 + \gamma_0 \gamma_1) y + \gamma_0^2]. \end{aligned}$$

Comparing the coefficients of  $y^0$  on both sides, we obtain  $\alpha = \gamma_0$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned}
\alpha y^{3f_0+q} &= (y^{f_0} + \gamma_{f_0-1}y^{f_0-1} + \cdots + \gamma_1y) + \alpha y^q(y^{f_0} + \gamma_{f_0-1}y^{f_0-1} \\
&\quad + \cdots + \gamma_1y + \gamma_0)[y^{2f_0} + (\gamma_{f_0-1} + \gamma_{f_0-1})y^{2f_0-1} \\
&\quad + (\gamma_{f_0-2} + \gamma_{f_0-1}\gamma_{f_0-1} + \gamma_{f_0-2})y^{2f_0-2} \\
&\quad + \cdots + (\gamma_0 + \gamma_{f_0-1}\gamma_1 + \gamma_{f_0-2}\gamma_2 + \cdots + \gamma_0)y^{f_0} \\
&\quad + \cdots + (\gamma_2\gamma_0 + \gamma_1\gamma_1 + \gamma_0\gamma_2)y^2 + (\gamma_1\gamma_0 + \gamma_0\gamma_1)y + \gamma_0^2]. \quad (3.77)
\end{aligned}$$

It follows that  $y^q | (y^{f_0} + \gamma_{f_0-1}y^{f_0-1} + \cdots + \gamma_1y)$ . Thus  $q \leq f_0$  and  $\gamma_{q-1} = \cdots = \gamma_1 = 0$ .

Dividing (3.77) by  $y^q$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\alpha y^{3f_0} &= (y^{f_0-q} + \gamma_{f_0-1}y^{f_0-1-q} + \cdots + \gamma_qy^{q-q}) + \alpha(y^{f_0} + \gamma_{f_0-1}y^{f_0-1} \\
&\quad + \cdots + \gamma_1y + \gamma_0)[y^{2f_0} + (\gamma_{f_0-1} + \gamma_{f_0-1})y^{2f_0-1} \\
&\quad + (\gamma_{f_0-2} + \gamma_{f_0-1}\gamma_{f_0-1} + \gamma_{f_0-2})y^{2f_0-2} \\
&\quad + \cdots + (\gamma_0 + \gamma_{f_0-1}\gamma_1 + \gamma_{f_0-2}\gamma_2 + \cdots + \gamma_0)y^{f_0} \\
&\quad + \cdots + (\gamma_2\gamma_0 + \gamma_1\gamma_1 + \gamma_0\gamma_2)y^2 + (\gamma_1\gamma_0 + \gamma_0\gamma_1)y + \gamma_0^2].
\end{aligned}$$

Comparing the coefficients of  $y^{3f_0-1}$  on both sides, we obtain  $0 = \alpha((\gamma_{f_0-1} + \gamma_{f_0-1}) + \gamma_{f_0-1})$ . Since  $\alpha \neq 0$ ,  $\gamma_{f_0-1} = 0$ . Comparing the coefficients of  $y^{3f_0-2}$  on both sides, we obtain  $0 = \alpha((\gamma_{f_0-2} + \gamma_{f_0-1}\gamma_{f_0-1} + \gamma_{f_0-2}) + \gamma_{f_0-1}(\gamma_{f_0-1} + \gamma_{f_0-1}) + \gamma_{f_0-2})$ . Since  $\alpha \neq 0$  and  $\gamma_{f_0-1} = 0$ ,  $\gamma_{f_0-2} = 0$ . Also, by comparing the coefficients of  $y^{3f_0-3}, \dots, y^{3f_0-f_0+1}$  on both sides, we obtain  $\gamma_{f_0-3} = \cdots = \gamma_{f_0-f_0+1} = 0$ . Finally, Comparing the coefficients of  $y^{3f_0-f_0} = y^{2f_0}$  on both sides, we obtain  $0 = \alpha((\gamma_0 + \gamma_{f_0-1}\gamma_1 + \gamma_{f_0-2}\gamma_2 + \cdots + \gamma_0) + \cdots + \gamma_1(\gamma_{f_0-1} + \gamma_{f_0-1}) + \gamma_0)$ . Since  $\alpha \neq 0$  and  $\gamma_{f_0-1} = \cdots = \gamma_1 = 0$ ,  $\gamma_0 = 0$ . This is a contradiction.

**Case 3.**  $g_2 = 0$ . Then  $f_1 = q$ ,  $F_1(y) = \alpha y^q$  and  $G_2(y) = \beta$ . By (3.72), we have  $0 = \alpha y^q G_1(y) + \beta F_0(y)$ . Then  $F_0(y) = -\frac{\alpha}{\beta} y^q G_1(y)$ . Thus  $y^q | F_0(y)$ . By (3.74), it follows that  $y^q | (1 + y^n)$ , which is impossible.

Hence for the case  $p = 3$ , (3.66) is irreducible.



สถาบันวิทยบริการ  
จุฬาลงกรณ์มหาวิทยาลัย

## REFERENCES

- [1] Ostrowski, A. M. On the multiplication and factorization of polynomials:  
I. Lexicographic orderings and extreme aggregates of terms. **Aequationes Math.** 13(1975): 201-228.
- [2] Ostrowski, A. M. On the multiplication and factorization of polynomials:  
II. Irreducibility discussion. **Aequationes Math.** 14(1976): 1-32.



สถาบันวิทยบริการ  
จุฬาลงกรณ์มหาวิทยาลัย

## VITA

Miss Amarisa Chantanasiri was born on March 20, 1980 in Bangkok, Thailand. She graduated with a Bachelor of Science in Mathematics with first class honours from Chulalongkorn University in 2001. She has got a scholarship from the Development and Promotion for Science and Technology Talents Project (DPST) since 1998. For her Master degree, she has studied Mathematics at the Department of Mathematics, Faculty of Science, Chulalongkorn University.



สถาบันวิทยบริการ  
จุฬาลงกรณ์มหาวิทยาลัย